

# ***Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission***

## **Draft Amendment 3 to the Interstate Fishery Management Plan for Atlantic Menhaden For Public Comment**



**August 2017**

***Vision: Sustainably Managing Atlantic Coastal Fisheries***

DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

Amendment 3 to the Interstate Fishery Management Plan for  
Atlantic Menhaden

Prepared by

Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission  
Atlantic Menhaden Plan Development Team

Plan Development Team Members:

Jeff Brust, New Jersey Department of Fish and Wildlife  
Joe Cimino, Virginia Marine Resources Commission  
Jesse Hornstein, New York Department of Environmental Conservation  
Nicole Lengyel, Rhode Island Department of Environmental Management  
Derek Orner, National Marine Fisheries Service  
Harry Rickabaugh, Maryland Department of Natural Resources  
Winnie Ryan, Maritime Research  
Andrew Scheld, Virginia Institute for Marine Science  
Krista Shipley, Florida Fish and Wildlife Conservation Commission  
Megan Ware (Chair), Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission

This is a report of the Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission pursuant to U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Award No. NA15NMF4740069.



## DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

The Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission seeks your input on Draft Amendment 3 to the Atlantic Menhaden Fishery Management Plan.

The public is encouraged to submit comments regarding this document during the public comment period. Comments must be received by **5:00 PM (EST) on October 24, 2017**.

Regardless of when they were sent, comments received after that time will not be included in the official record. The Atlantic Menhaden Management Board will consider public comment on this document before finalizing Amendment 3.

You may submit public comment by attending a public hearing held in your state or jurisdiction or mailing, faxing, or emailing written comments to the address below. Comments can also be referred to your state's members on the Atlantic Menhaden Management Board or Atlantic Menhaden Advisory Panel; however, only comments received at a public hearing or written comments submitted to the Commission will become part of the public comment record.

Mail: Megan Ware  
Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission  
1050 N. Highland Street, Suite 200 A-N  
Arlington VA. 22201

Email: [comments@asmfc.org](mailto:comments@asmfc.org)  
(Subject: Draft Amd. 3)  
Phone: 703.842.0740  
Fax: 703.842.0741

If your organization is planning to release an action alert in response to Draft Amendment 3, please contact Megan Ware at 703.842.0740, so she can work with you to develop a unique subject line to enable us to better organize and summarize incoming comments for Board review.

# DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

The timeline for completion of Amendment 3 is as follows:

	Oct 2016	Nov 2016 – Jan 2017	Feb 2017	Mar – July 2017	Aug 2017	Aug – Oct 2017	Nov 2017
Approval of Draft PID by Board	<b>X</b>						
Public review and comment on PID		<b>X</b>					
Board review of public comment; Board direction on what to include in Draft Amendment 3			<b>X</b>				
Preparation of Draft Amendment 3				<b>X</b>			
Review and approval of Draft Amendment 3 by Board for public comment					<b>X</b>		
Public review and comment on Draft Amendment 3 <i>Current Step</i>						<b>X</b>	
Board review of public comment on Draft Amendment 3							<b>X</b>
Review and approval of the final Amendment 3 by the Board, Policy Board and Commission							<b>X</b>

## Table of Contents

1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	1
1.1 Background Information .....	1
1.1.1 Statement of Problem.....	1
1.1.2 Benefits of Implementation .....	2
1.2 Description of the Resource .....	3
1.2.1 Species Life History .....	3
1.2.2 Stock Assessment Summary .....	7
1.2.3 Current Stock Status .....	9
1.3 Description of the Fishery .....	10
1.3.1 Commercial Fishery.....	10
1.3.2 Recreational Fishery.....	14
1.3.3 Subsistence Fishing .....	14
1.3.4 Non-Consumptive Factors .....	14
1.3.5 Interactions with Other Fisheries .....	14
1.4 Habitat Considerations .....	15
1.4.1 Physical Description of Habitat.....	15
1.4.2 Environmental Requirements of Atlantic Menhaden.....	17
1.4.3 Identification and Distribution of Essential Habitat .....	20
1.4.4 Anthropogenic Impacts on Atlantic Menhaden and Their Habitat .....	21
1.4.5 Description of Programs to Protect, Restore, & Preserve Atlantic Menhaden Habitat .....	22
1.5 Impacts of the Fishery Management Program .....	23
1.5.1 Biological and Ecological Impacts .....	23
1.5.2 Social and Economic Impacts.....	25
2.0 GOALS AND OBJECTIVES .....	26
2.1 History of Management.....	26
2.2 Purpose and Need for Action.....	28
2.3 Goal .....	29
2.4 Objectives.....	29
2.5 Management Unit.....	30
2.5.1 Management Area .....	30
2.6 Reference Points .....	30

## DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

2.6.1 History of Reference Points .....	30
2.6.2 ASMFC Multi-Species Management Efforts.....	31
2.6.3 External Guidelines for Forage Fish .....	33
2.6.4 Definition of Overfishing and Overfished/Depleted.....	34
2.6.5 Stock Rebuilding Program.....	38
3.0 MONITORING PROGRAM SPECIFICATION .....	38
3.1 Commercial Catch and Landings Program .....	38
3.1.1 Reduction Fishery Catch Reporting Process .....	39
3.1.2 Bait Fishery Catch Reporting Process .....	39
3.2 Recreational Fishery Catch Reporting Process .....	40
3.3 For-Hire Fishery Catch Reporting Process .....	41
3.4 Social and Economic Collection Programs.....	41
3.5 Biological Data Collection Programs .....	41
3.5.1 Fishery-Dependent Data Collection .....	42
3.5.2 Fishery-Independent Data Collection .....	43
3.5.3 Observer Programs .....	43
3.6 Assessment of Stock Condition.....	43
3.6.1 Assessment of Population Age/Size Structure .....	43
3.6.2 Assessment of Annual Recruitment.....	44
3.6.3 Assessment of Fecundity .....	44
3.6.4 Assessment of Fishing Mortality.....	44
3.7 Stocking Program .....	44
4.0 MANAGEMENT PROGRAM .....	44
4.1 Recreational Fishery Management Measures .....	44
4.2 For-Hire Fisheries Management Measures .....	44
4.3 Commercial Fishery Management Measures .....	45
4.3.1 Total Allowable Catch .....	45
4.3.2 Quota Allocation .....	46
4.3.3 Quota Transfers .....	63
4.3.4 Quota Rollovers .....	65
4.3.5 Incidental Catch and Small Scale Fisheries .....	66
4.3.6 Episodic Events Set Aside Program.....	69
4.3.7 Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Cap .....	71

## DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

4.4 Habitat Conservation and Restoration Recommendations .....	72
4.4.1 Preservation of Existing Habitat .....	73
4.4.2 Habitat Restoration and Improvement .....	73
4.4.3 Avoidance of Incompatible Activities .....	73
4.4.4 Fishery Practices .....	73
4.5 Alternative State Management Regimes .....	74
4.5.1 General Procedures .....	74
4.5.2 Management Program Equivalency .....	74
4.5.3 <i>De Minimis</i> Fishery Guidelines .....	74
4.6 Adaptive Management .....	76
4.6.1 General Procedures .....	76
4.6.2 Measures Subject to Change .....	77
4.7 Emergency Procedures .....	77
4.8 Management Institutions .....	78
4.8.1 Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission and ISFMP Policy Board .....	78
4.8.2 Atlantic Menhaden Management Board .....	78
4.8.3. Atlantic Menhaden Plan Development Team .....	78
4.8.4 Atlantic Menhaden Plan Review Team .....	78
4.8.5 Atlantic Menhaden Technical Committee .....	79
4.8.6 Atlantic Menhaden Stock Assessment Subcommittee .....	79
4.8.7 Biological Ecological Reference Point Work Group .....	79
4.8.8 Atlantic Menhaden Advisory Panel .....	79
4.8.9 Federal Agencies .....	80
4.9 Recommendation to the Secretary of Commerce for Complementary Measures in Federal Waters .....	80
4.10 Cooperation With Other Management Institutions .....	80
5.0 COMPLIANCE .....	80
5.1 Mandatory Compliance Elements for States .....	81
5.1.1 Regulatory Requirements .....	81
5.2 Compliance Schedule .....	82
5.3 Compliance Reports .....	82
5.4 Procedures for Determining Compliance .....	82
5.5. Analysis of the Enforceability of Proposed Measures .....	83

DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

6.0 Research Needs.....	83
6.1 Stock Assessment and Population Dynamics Research Needs.....	84
6.1.1 Annual Data Collection .....	84
6.1.2 Assessment Methodology.....	84
6.2 Habitat Research Needs.....	85
6.3 Socio-Economic Research Needs .....	85
7.0 PROTECTED SPECIES.....	85
7.1 Marine Mammal Protection Act Requirements .....	86
7.2 Endangered Species Act Requirements .....	87
7.3 Protected Species with Potential Fishery Interactions .....	87
7.3.1 Marine Mammals.....	88
7.3.2 Sea Turtles.....	93
7.3.3 Atlantic Sturgeon .....	96
7.3.4 Seabirds.....	97
7.4 Proposed Federal Regulations/Actions Pertaining to the Relevant Protected Species .....	97
7.5 Potential Impacts to Atlantic Coastal State and Interstate Fisheries .....	97
8.0 REFERENCES .....	99
9.0 TABLES.....	110
10.0 FIGURES.....	118
Appendix 1.....	123
Appendix 2.....	127



## 1.0 INTRODUCTION

The Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission (ASMFC), under the authority of the Atlantic Coastal Fisheries Cooperative Management Act, is responsible for managing Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*) from Maine through Florida. ASMFC has coordinated the interstate management of Atlantic menhaden in state waters (0-3 miles) since 1981. Amendment 3 to the Interstate Fishery Management Plan for Atlantic menhaden replaces Amendment 2 (ASMFC, 2013). Management authority in the exclusive economic zone (3-200 miles from shore) lies with NOAA Fisheries.

## 1.1 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

At their May 2015 meeting, the Atlantic Menhaden Management Board (Board) initiated the development of Amendment 3 to the Atlantic Menhaden FMP to pursue the development of ecological reference points (ERPs) and revisit allocation methods. The Board approved the Amendment 3 Public Information Document for public comment in October 2016. Public comment was received and hearings were held between December 2016 and January 2017. At their February 2017 meeting, the Board tasked the Plan Development Team (PDT) with developing Draft Amendment 3.

### 1.1.1 Statement of Problem

#### 1.1.1.1 Ecological Reference Points

Amendment 2 established single-species reference points to manage the menhaden stock. These reference points were based on maximum spawning potential (MSP) and included a measure of fishing mortality (F) and spawning stock biomass (SSB) to determine an overfishing and overfished status. Per Amendment 2, overfishing was defined by a target and threshold of  $F_{30\%MSP}$  and  $F_{15\%MSP}$ , respectively, while an overfished stock was defined by a target and threshold of  $SSB_{30\%MSP}$  and  $SSB_{15\%MSP}$ , respectively.

In 2015, the Board approved a new Atlantic Menhaden Benchmark Stock Assessment which updated the reference points for Atlantic menhaden in order to provide a better measure of sustainability (SEDAR, 2015). Specifically, the reference points were changed to be the maximum and median geometric mean fishing mortality rate for ages 2-4 during 1960-2012, a period deemed sustainable. Corresponding reference points based on fecundity (FEC) were also established to determine an overfished status. This method was applied to the 2017 Stock Assessment Update. Resulting reference points are an overfishing threshold and target of  $F_{21\%}$  and  $F_{36\%}$ , respectively, and an overfished threshold and target of  $FEC_{21\%}$  and  $FEC_{36\%}$ , respectively. As of 2016, the terminal year used in the 2017 Stock Assessment Update, the stock is not overfished and overfishing is not occurring.

An important outcome of the 2015 Stock Assessment and Peer Review Report was the high priority given to the development of ERPs for Atlantic menhaden management. Menhaden serve an important role in the marine ecosystem as they convert phytoplankton into protein

and, in turn, provide a food source to a variety of species including larger fish (e.g., weakfish, striped bass, bluefish, cod), birds (e.g., bald eagles, osprey), and marine mammals (e.g., humpback whales, bottlenose dolphin). As a result, changes in the abundance of menhaden may have implications for the marine ecosystem. ERPs provide a method to assess the status of menhaden not only with regard to the sustainability of human harvest, but also with regard to their interactions with predators and the status of other prey species. This method accounts for several species' menhaden predation requirements when setting an overfished and overfishing threshold for menhaden. The benefit of this approach is that it allows fishery managers to consider the harvest of menhaden within a broad ecosystem context, which includes other fish, birds, mammals, and humans who utilize and depend on marine resources.

#### ***1.1.1.2 Allocation***

Amendment 2 established a first-ever commercial total allowable catch (TAC) for Atlantic menhaden and divided this catch into commercial quotas for participating jurisdictions from Maine through Florida. The allocation formula assigns each state a percentage of the TAC based on each jurisdiction's average landings between 2009 and 2011. Since it was implemented in 2013, the quota system has maintained the annual directed harvest of menhaden below the annual coastwide TAC set by the Board.

Amendment 2 requires allocation to be revisited every three years. In reviewing menhaden allocations, the Board expressed interest in investigating different allocation methods and timeframes given concerns that the current approach may not strike a balance between gear types and regions. Specifically, some states have expressed concern that under the current allocation method, increases in the TAC result in limited benefits to small-scale fisheries. In addition, there is concern that the current allocation method does not provide a balance between the present needs of the fishery and future growth opportunities. Given the apparent geographic expansion of the stock, particularly in New England, the 2009-2011 time-period on which allocation is based may limit states who currently have minimal quota from participating in the growing fishery. Some states have also found evidence of un-reported landings during the reference period, meaning the quota system may have reduced their fisheries to a greater extent than originally intended.

#### ***1.1.2 Benefits of Implementation***

Amendment 3 is designed to integrate the ecological role of menhaden into the management of the species and establish an allocation method which provides fair and equitable access to all participants in the fishery.

Amendment 3 contains a management program designed to account for the multiple roles that menhaden play, both in supporting fisheries for human use and the marine ecosystem. Issues addressed in Amendment 3 include:

1. Reference Points: How menhaden are allocated between the marine ecosystem and those that harvest menhaden for human use.

2. Allocation Method: How menhaden are allocated between those jurisdictions and fisheries which directly or indirectly harvest menhaden.
3. Allocation Timeframe: The timeframe upon which the allocation method is based.
4. Quota Transfers: How menhaden quota is moved between those stakeholders which receive an allocation.
5. Quota Rollovers: Whether unused quota can be rolled over into the subsequent fishing year.
6. Incidental Catch: How landings from non-directed and small scale fisheries are accounted for in the management of the species.
7. Episodic Events Program: Whether there is a program designed to minimize discards in the fishery when menhaden are in greater abundance than they normally occur.
8. Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Cap: Whether there is a cap which limits harvest by the reduction fishery in the Chesapeake Bay, an important nursery ground for menhaden.

#### **1.1.2.1 Ecological Benefits**

Atlantic menhaden occupy an important link in the coastal marine food chain as they transfer planktonic material into animal biomass. Due to their interconnectivity with other species, menhaden help to provide top-down controls on phytoplankton and zooplankton populations while supporting a variety of predator species. These predators include important commercial and recreational species such as striped bass and weakfish, iconic birds such as osprey and bald eagles, and charismatic marine mammals such as the humpback whale. Reduced menhaden populations may impact the abundance and diversity of predator populations, particularly if other prey options are limited or not available. Given menhaden are found from Maine to Florida, the species serves an ecological role along much of the Atlantic coast. Thus, maintaining a healthy Atlantic menhaden population contributes to a balanced marine ecosystem (see *Section 1.2.1.5 Ecological Roles* for additional information).

#### **1.1.2.2 Social/Economic Benefits**

Menhaden play an important ecological role while supporting valuable and culturally significant commercial fisheries. Incorporating ecological reference points into menhaden management may provide ancillary benefits to a wide variety of coastal stakeholders who value species which depend on menhaden as a food source. Establishing quota allocation methods that provide fair and equitable access to all fishery participants may enhance social and economic benefits by increasing derived value and stabilizing economic returns. This in turn improves resilience in fishery-dependent communities along the Atlantic coast.

### **1.2 DESCRIPTION OF THE RESOURCE**

#### **1.2.1 Species Life History**

##### **1.2.1.1 Stock Structure and Migration**

Atlantic menhaden is a euryhaline species that inhabits nearshore and inland tidal waters from Florida to Nova Scotia, Canada. Size-frequency information and tagging studies indicate that the

Atlantic menhaden resource is a single unit stock (Dryfoos et al., 1973; Nicholson, 1972; Nicholson, 1978). Recent genetic studies also support the designation of Atlantic menhaden as a single stock (Anderson, 2007; Lynch et al., 2010).

Spawning occurs principally at sea, with some activity in bays and sounds in the northern portion of its range (Judy and Lewis, 1983). Eggs hatch at sea and the larvae are transported by ocean currents (Checkley et al., 1988; Nelson et al., 1977; Quinlan et al., 1999) to estuaries where they metamorphose and grow rapidly as juveniles (Edwards, 2009). Adults stratify by size during the summer, with older and larger individuals migrating farthest, reaching Narragansett Bay by May and the Gulf of Maine by June. During November and December, most of the adult population moves south to the Virginia and North Carolina capes. Adults that remain in the south Atlantic region during spring and summer migrate further south later in the year, reaching northern Florida by fall. Schools of adult menhaden reassemble in late March or early April and migrate northward. By June the population is redistributed from Florida to Maine (Ahrenholz, 1991).

#### **1.2.1.2 Age and Growth**

During the 1950s and early 1960s, Atlantic menhaden older than age-6 were present in the spawning population; however, fish older than age-6 have been uncommon in recent years. Today, the majority of the landings are comprised of fish ages 1-4 (SEDAR, 2015).

The growth of Atlantic menhaden varies from year-to-year and occurs primarily during the warmer months (AMTC, 2006). Growth of juveniles is density-dependent (Ahrenholz et al., 1987) such that growth rates are accelerated during the first year when juvenile abundance is low and are reduced when juvenile abundance is high. Lengths of young-of-year menhaden range in size, and this variation is a function of density, timing of larval ingress, temperature, and food availability (Ahrenholz, 1991; Houde, 2011). Adult menhaden can reach a total length of up to 500 mm and a weigh over 1.5 kg (Cooper, 1965; SEDAR, 2015; Smith and O'Bier, 1996). Due to their extensive migratory range (see *Section 1.2.1.1*), larger fish of a given age are captured farther north than smaller fish of the same age (Nicholson, 1978; Reish et al., 1985). This fact complicates attempts to estimate overall growth for the entire stock from size-at-age data compiled from a single area along the coast.

#### **1.2.1.3 Spawning and Reproduction**

Some Atlantic menhaden become sexually mature during their first year, with more than 50% mature at age-2 (SEDAR, 2015). First-spawning age-3 fish have accounted for most of the stock's egg production since 1965 (Vaughan and Smith, 1988). Atlantic menhaden mature at smaller sizes at the southern end of their range (180 mm FL in the south Atlantic versus 210 mm FL in the Chesapeake Bay and 230 mm farther north) because of latitudinal differences in size-at-age and the fact that larger fish of a given age are distributed farther north than smaller fish of the same cohort (Lewis et al., 1987).

Spawning of Atlantic menhaden is thought to occur throughout the year (Higham and Nicholson, 1964); however, it varies by season and region based on migration patterns.

Spawning in the north occurs in the summer months (Judy and Lewis, 1983; Kendall and Reintjes, 1975; Lozano and Houde, 2012), spawning in the Mid-Atlantic occurs in early fall, and peak spawning in the South Atlantic Bight occurs in December (Higham and Nicholson, 1964; Judy and Lewis, 1983; Lozano and Houde, 2012). Spawning is followed by the coastward dispersion of eggs and larvae, and ingress into estuaries where juvenile development occurs (Houde et al., 2016; Lozano and Houde, 2013; Rice et al., 1999; SABRE, 1999; Warlen, 1994; Warlen et al., 2002).

Timing and location of spawning seem to be limited by temperature, usually occurring in waters warmer than 14-16°C (Stegmann et al. 1999, Light and Able, 2003), or within the 15-20°C isotherms (MDSG 2009). Hall et al. (1991) report that temperatures below 5°C or above 33°C are lethal to larvae. Based on a review of field and laboratory studies, Warlen et al. (2002) concluded that optimum temperature for hatching, larval survival, and growth is  $\geq 16^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Reported salinities range from ~25 to 33 (MDSG 2009), although salinity tolerances for eggs and larvae are wide ranging. Available literature has not been summarized to indicate typical or persistent locations of continental shelf spawning areas but egg concentrations have been observed near shorelines, bay mouths, inlets, and 70 to 140 km offshore (Judy and Lewis 1983; Kendall and Reintjes, 1975; Marak et al., 1962).

Recently, there has been progress in relating measures of primary productivity to recruitment and growth of young-of-year (YOY) menhaden. Research has shown there is a positive correlation between recruitment and euphotic-zone *chl-a* and integrated annual primary production in the Chesapeake Bay (Houde and Harding, 2009), suggesting that menhaden populations are controlled in part by bottom-up processes (i.e., quantity of food available). Despite these findings, additional work has found no significant correlation between YOY menhaden abundance and *chl-a* for the entire four-decade period that included times of both low and high menhaden recruitment events in Chesapeake Bay. The strong correlation between YOY menhaden abundance and *chl-a* in recent years (1989-2004) as noted above did not persist throughout the longer time series (1966-2006). On average, years with low freshwater flow and low turbidity supported higher abundances and recruitment of YOY menhaden (Houde et al., 2016; Love et al., 2006; Lynch et al., 2010). Other correlations between YOY menhaden abundance and environmental or hydrographic variables were not significant or were only marginally significant (e.g., negative correlations with total dissolved phosphorus and with abundances of zooplankton taxa favored by low salinities). These conflicting bodies of work further highlight the complexity that exists between nutrient cycling, climatic drivers, and understanding the life history traits of Atlantic menhaden.

#### **1.2.1.4 Mortality**

The Atlantic menhaden population is subject to a high natural mortality rate, particularly during the first two years of life. Estimates of natural mortality have ranged from  $M = 0.37$  (Schaaf and Huntsman, 1972) to  $M = 0.52$  (Dryfoos et al., 1985). Previous assessments, beginning with Ahrenholz et al. (1987), used  $M = 0.45$ , whereas the 2015 Benchmark Stock Assessment used a time varying but age constant natural mortality to better account for known sources of natural

mortality such as predation, pollution, habitat degradation, toxic algal blooms, and hypoxia (SEDAR, 2015).

Predation remains a large source of natural mortality for menhaden due to their high abundance in estuaries and coastal waters (Ahrenholz, 1991). Many large piscivorous sea mammals, birds, and fish are potential predators of Atlantic menhaden, including bluefish, striped bass, king mackerel, Spanish mackerel, pollock, cod, weakfish, silver hake, tunas, swordfish, bonito, tarpon, and a variety of sharks. See additional details in *Section 1.2.1.5: Ecological Roles*.

Coastal pollution, habitat degradation, and disease also threaten marine fish species such as Atlantic menhaden which spend their first year of life in estuarine waters and the rest of their life in both ocean and estuarine waters. Fish kills, due principally to low dissolved oxygen conditions, disease, and parasites are additional yet poorly understood sources of natural mortality (Burkholder et al., 1992; Blazer et al., 1999; Noga, 2000; Law, 2001; Glasgow et al., 2001; Vogelbein et al., 2001; Kiryu et al., 2002; Reimschuessel et al., 2003; Burkholder et al., 2005). A variety of diseases are thought to affect menhaden survival (Stephens et al., 1980; Noga and Dykstra, 1986; Noga et al., 1988; Levine et al., 1990a; Levine et al., 1990b; Dykstra and Kane, 2000; Goshorn et al., 2004; Stine et al., 2005; Blazer et al., 2007). Menhaden are also known to induce fatal hypoxic events, where reports of such school-induced hypoxia and resulting fish kills going back to the 1800's (Oviatt et al., 1972; Smith, 1999).

#### **1.2.1.5 Ecological Roles**

Menhaden occupy an important link in the coastal marine food chain, transferring planktonic material into animal biomass. As a result, menhaden influence the conversion and exchange of energy and organic matter within the coastal ecosystem throughout their range (Lewis and Peters, 1984; Peters and Lewis, 1984; Peters and Schaaf, 1981). Studies have indicated that menhaden are a part of the diet of many species including striped bass, bluefish, weakfish, and piscivorous birds (Viverette et al. 2007). As a result, changes in the abundance and distribution of menhaden can have impacts on a variety of species given their role in the food web.

Atlantic menhaden occupy two distinct types of feeding niches during their lifetime. Phytoplankton is the major food of juvenile and young adult menhaden. The role of zooplankton in the diet becomes more important in older menhaden as gill-raker spacing on their filtering apparatus increases in size (Friedland et al., 1984; 2006). The relative importance of each food type varies with ontogeny, region, and local availability.

The role of Atlantic menhaden in systems function and community dynamics has received much attention in recent years. Spatially-explicit bioenergetics models have been used to estimate the carrying capacity of menhaden in the Chesapeake Bay as well as the reduction of habitat volume from eutrophication and hypoxia (Brandt and Mason, 2003; Luo et al., 2001). Additionally, simulation models of Narragansett Bay and the Chesapeake Bay indicate that Atlantic menhaden could have substantial effects on zooplankton and phytoplankton populations, and on nutrient dynamics (Durbin and Durbin 1975; 1998; Gottlieb 1998).

However, a study by Lynch et al. (2010) suggests that the menhaden population probably plays little role in removing nitrogen from Chesapeake Bay waters, and may actually provide additional nitrogen to Bay phytoplankton. Results suggest that YOY menhaden focus their grazing on patches of elevated phytoplankton abundance and/or supplement their diet with other sources (e.g. zooplankton and detritus) to maintain a positive nitrogen balance. As a result, the study suggests that menhaden may play a minimal role in net nitrogen removal from the Chesapeake Bay.

### ***1.2.2 Stock Assessment Summary***

Based on tagging (Dryfoos et al., 1973; Nicholson, 1978) and genetic studies (Anderson, 2007; Lynch, 2010), the Atlantic menhaden fishery is believed to be a single stock or population of fish, and is assessed as a single coastwide stock. Data used in the stock assessment includes commercial and recreational landings at-age from Maine to Florida, two fishery independent adult indices based on nine state surveys, one each for the northern and southern regions, and a juvenile abundance index (JAI) developed from state seine, trawl, and other gear surveys along the coast.

Growth is estimated using a time invariant weight-length relationship based on fishery-dependent data that is bias corrected using the methods in Schueller et al. (2014). Weight at age is estimated from overall weight-length parameters and annual lengths at age. Maturity at age is developed using maturity records from reduction fishery catches and NEAMAP survey data. A logistic regression is fit to length and maturity data in addition to using time-varying lengths at age to calculate time-varying maturity at age. Natural mortality is calculated by an age-varying, time invariant approach using the methods of Lorenzen (1996) that are scaled to tagging estimates of natural mortality. This estimate of natural mortality accounts for multiple sources of mortality including predation, pollution, habitat degradation, toxic algal blooms, and hypoxia. The assessment model is structured into “fleets-as-areas” in order to account for differences between bait and reduction fisheries in the north and south. In addition, dome shaped selectivity is used for all fishery fleets.

The Beaufort Assessment Model (BAM) is used to produce final assessment results. This is a statistical forward-projection model that has been used in previous Atlantic menhaden assessments (SEDAR, 2015).

#### ***1.2.2.1 Abundance and Structure***

Annual Atlantic menhaden population size (age 0 and older at the start of the fishing season) has ranged from approximately 10 to 85 billion fish since 1955 (Figure 3). Population size averaged 45.0 billion menhaden during 1955-1959 when landings were high (averaging >600,000 mt). During the 1960's, the menhaden stock contracted geographically, and the population averaged 14.9 billion fish. Total menhaden landings dropped to a low of 172,200 mt in 1969. In the 1970s and 1980s the menhaden population began to expand and the population size averaged 30.8 billion fish. During this time period, average landings rose to over 300,000 mt. During the 1990s, the Atlantic menhaden stock contracted again, and catches declined from

429,300 mt in 1990 to 206,000 mt in 1999. From 2000-2016, the population size averaged 16.4 billion fish and total catches have averaged about 200,000 mt per year.

The oldest menhaden age classes comprise the smallest proportion of the population (Figure 3), but this proportion has increased in recent years (SEDAR, 2015). For this reason, biomass is likely increasing at a faster rate than abundance because of the increased number of older fish at age and the associated increase in weight at age (SEDAR, 2015).

#### **1.2.2.2 Fishing Mortality**

Highly variable fishing mortalities are noted throughout the entire time series and are dependent upon fishing effort. The highest fishing mortalities for the commercial reduction fishery in the north are estimated to have occurred in the 1950s (Figure 4), whereas the highest fishing mortality rates for the commercial reduction fishery in the south are estimated to have occurred during the 1970s and 1990s (Figure 4). The highest fishing mortalities for the commercial bait fishery in the north are estimated to have occurred in the 1950s and 1990s (Figure 5), while the highest fishing mortality rates for the commercial bait fishery in the south are estimated to have occurred during the late 1990s and early 2000s (Figure 5).

In the 2015 Benchmark Stock Assessment, the Technical Committee (TC) initially recommended that the Board adopt a fishing mortality threshold based on the maximum  $F$  value at age-2 during the 1960-2012 time period and a target fishing mortality based on the median  $F$  value during this time period. However, in order to provide a more robust measure of fishing pressure under changing selectivity, it was recommended by the Peer Review panel that the geometric mean fishing mortality on ages-2 to -4 be used instead of the suggested age-2 reference points. This recommendation was accepted for use by the TC because these ages represent the fully selected fishing mortality rates depending upon the year and fishery (i.e., bait and reduction). As a result of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update, the fishing mortality reference points are  $F$ -target ( $F_{36\% \text{ MSP}} = 0.80$ ) and  $F$ -threshold ( $F_{21\% \text{ MSP}} = 1.85$ ).

Based on these reference points, fishing mortality has remained below the fishing mortality threshold (1.85) since the 1960s, hovered around the target (0.80) throughout most of the time-series, and was estimated to be 0.51 in 2016 (the terminal year of the assessment).

#### **1.2.2.3 Recruitment**

Age-0 recruits of Atlantic menhaden (Figure 6) were high during the late 1950s, especially the 1958 year-class. Recruitment was generally poor during the 1960s and high during the late 1970s and early 1980s. Since then, recruitment has been low with notable year classes in 2005 and 2010. The estimated number of age-0 fish in 2016 (the terminal year of the assessment) was 13.36 billion fish.

#### **1.2.2.4 Spawning Stock Biomass (Fecundity)**

Often reproductive capacity of a stock is modeled using female weight-at-age, primarily because of a lack of fecundity data. To the extent that egg production is not linearly related to female weight, indices of egg production (fecundity) are better measures of the reproductive



output of a stock at a given size and age structure. Additionally, fecundity better emphasizes the important contribution of older and larger individuals to egg production. Thus, in the most recent benchmark stock assessment (SEDAR, 2015), modeling increases in egg production with size was preferable to female biomass as a measure of the reproductive capability of the stock.

Population fecundity (*FEC*, number of maturing ova) was highest in the early 1960s, early 1970s, and the present decade, and has generally been higher with older age classes making up a larger proportion of the population (Figure 7). Large values of population fecundity were present in 2012 and 2013. Throughout the time series, age-2 and age-3 fish have produced most of the total estimated number of eggs spawned annually; however, in more recent years, ages-4+ have contributed a higher proportion to the overall number of eggs.

#### **1.2.2.5 Maximum Spawning Potential**

Amendment 2 (2013) implemented maximum spawning potential (MSP) based reference points that relate current stock conditions as a percent of unfished conditions. An unfished stock is equal to 100% MSP. Considering the modeling and data input changes that occurred in the 2015 Benchmark Stock Assessment, the TC and Peer Review Panel recommended new MSP based reference points that are applicable to the results of the assessment (ASMFC 2015).

The fecundity (*FEC*) reference points match the *F* reference points, meaning they are equal to the fecundity estimated when the population reaches equilibrium when fishing under the fishing mortality target and threshold MSP levels, respectively. The associated reference points for population fecundity are *FEC*-target ( $FEC_{36\%MSP}$ ) = 99,467 (billions of eggs), and *FEC*-threshold ( $FEC_{21\%MSP}$ ) = 57,295 (billions of eggs). In other words, the *FEC* target would maintain 36% of the spawning potential of an unfished stock, and the threshold would preserve 21% of the spawning potential of an unfished stock. In 2016, fecundity was estimated to be 83,486 billion eggs.

#### **1.2.3 Current Stock Status**

The current stock status determination is based on the 2017 Atlantic Menhaden Stock Assessment Update (ASMFC, 2017). The fishing mortality reference points are *F*-target ( $F_{36\%}$ ) = 0.80 and *F*-threshold ( $F_{21\%}$ ) = 1.85. The associated reference points for population fecundity are *FEC*-target ( $FEC_{36\%}$ ) = 99,467 (billions of eggs), and *FEC*-threshold ( $FEC_{21\%}$ ) = 57,295 (billions of eggs). As of 2016, overfishing is not occurring because fishing mortality for the terminal year is estimated to be  $F = 0.51$ , below both the target and the threshold (Figure 8). Additionally, the stock is not overfished because fecundity for 2016 is estimated to be  $FEC = 83,486$  billion eggs, above the threshold and just below the target (Figure 9).

### **1.3 DESCRIPTION OF THE FISHERY**

#### ***1.3.1 Commercial Fishery***

Atlantic menhaden have supported one of the United States' largest fisheries since colonial times. Menhaden have repeatedly been listed as one of the nation's most important commercial fisheries in terms of quantity. Preliminary Atlantic menhaden landings in 2016 totaled 181,344 mt (399.8 million lb) (Table 9). Landings records indicate that roughly 25 million mt (55.1 billion lb) of Atlantic menhaden have been caught by fishing fleets operating from Maine to Florida since 1940.

Native Americans were the first to use menhaden, primarily as fertilizer. Colonists soon recognized the value of menhaden as fertilizer and local seine fisheries gradually developed from Maine to New York. In 1811, the menhaden oil industry began in Rhode Island (Frye, 1999). Numerous small factories were located along the Northeast coasts; however, their supply was limited to fish that could be captured by the traditional shore-based seines. In 1845, the purse seine was introduced, enabling fishermen to harvest a larger quantity of menhaden further from shore. By 1870, the industry had expanded southward, with several plants in the Chesapeake Bay and North Carolina areas (Whitehurst, 1973). The industry gradually developed during the late 1800s and early 1900s and was described in considerable detail prior to World War I by Greer (1915). After World War I, the primary use of menhaden changed from fertilizer to animal feed due to the development of a process known as fish reduction. Menhaden meal began to be mixed into poultry, swine, and cattle feeds as the amount used for fertilizer decreased (Harrison, 1931). The current commercial fishery is divided into the reduction fishery, in which menhaden are produced into fish meal and fish oil, and the bait fishery, in which menhaden are harvested as a bait source for other commercial and recreational fisheries. A variety of gears are used to harvest menhaden commercially.

##### ***1.3.1.1 Reduction Fishery***

###### **Vessels, Reduction Plants, and Harvest Capacity**

Several technological advances have helped the menhaden reduction fishery maintain its viability over the last century. The early menhaden purse seine reduction fishery utilized sailing vessels; however, the introduction of coal-fired steamers after the Civil War enabled the reduction fishery to fish further grounds. In the 1930s, vessels again improved through the use of diesel-power which replaced many of the coal-fired steamers. A critical development in the reduction fishery was the use of spotter aircraft in 1946. This practice is still used today to locate schools of menhaden. The refrigeration of vessel holds in the 1960s and 1970s was another crucial development for the reduction fishery. Despite restricted access to a number of traditional fishing grounds, a reduced fleet size, and fewer processing plants to land fish, refrigerated holds enabled the fleet to maximize the harvest during peak resource availability. Refrigeration also allowed the fleet to stay out longer and access a wider geographic area, greatly improving the ability to catch fish when and where they were available. All seven vessels in the menhaden fleet in 2013 utilized refrigerated fish holds, compared to only 60% of the fleet in 1980.

Currently, menhaden reduction operations use spotter aircraft to locate schools of menhaden and direct vessels to the fish. When a school is located, two purse boats, with a net stretched between them, are deployed. The purse boats encircle the school and close the net to form a purse, or bag. The net is then retrieved to concentrate the catch, and the mother ship comes along the side and pumps the catch into refrigerated holds. Individual sets can vary from 10 mt to more than 100 mt, and large vessels can carry 400-600 mt of refrigerated fish.

Overall, the total number of vessels participating in the menhaden reduction fishery has declined through time. Greer (1915) reported 147 vessels in 1912. During 1955-1959, about 115-130 vessels fished during the summer season, while 30-60 participated in the North Carolina fall fishery. As the resource declined during the 1960s, fleet size decreased by more than 50%. Through the 1970s, approximately 40 vessels fished during the summer season, while roughly 20 were active in the fall fishery. During 1980-1990, 16-33 vessels fished the summer season, and the level of effort in the fall fishery ranged from 3 to 25 vessels. In 2013, only seven vessels participated in the reduction fishery.

One of the major changes in the reduction fishery has been the decrease in the number of operating reduction plants. During peak landing years (1953-1962), there were anywhere from 19 to 25 reduction plants in operation located along the Atlantic coast from Maine to Florida. Many plants closed in the late 1960s as the resource began to decline and, in 1975, there were 12 reduction plants in operation. In 1985, this decreased to six plants and by 1994, there were only three plants located in Virginia and North Carolina. A major change in the reduction industry took place following the 1997 fishing season, when the two reduction plants operating in Reedville, VA, consolidated into a single company and a single factory; this significantly reduced effort and overall production capacity. Another major event within the industry occurred in the spring of 2005 when the fish factory in Beaufort, NC, closed and the owners sold the property to coastal developers. Today, there is a single reduction plant along the U.S. Atlantic coast located in Reedville, Virginia.

Reduction landings averaged 310,900 mt from 1940-2016, but only averaged 161,700 mt from 2000 – 2016 (Table 9, Figure 10). Reduction landings since 1940 peaked in 1956 at 712,100 mt, with the lowest value since 1940 occurring in 2013 (131,000 mt). It is important to note that 2013 was the first year a TAC was implemented in the menhaden fishery. This TAC represented a 20% reduction from average landings in 2009-2011. Other causes of declines in reduction harvest include lower menhaden abundance, reduced fleet size, and reduced reduction plant capacity.

The menhaden reduction fishery is seasonal as the presence of menhaden schools is dependent on the temperature of coastal waters. Two fairly distinct fishing seasons occur: the ‘summer fishery’ and the ‘fall fishery’. The summer fishery begins in April with the appearance of schools of menhaden off the North Carolina coast. The fish migrate northward, appearing off southern New England in May-June. The fall fishery begins when migratory fish appear off Virginia and North Carolina. In early fall, this southward migration is initiated by cooling ocean

temperatures. By late November-early December, most of the fish are found between Cape Hatteras and Cape Fear, North Carolina.

#### Reduction Fishery Products

Menhaden reduction plants, through a process of heating, separating, and drying, produce fish meal, fish oil, and fish solubles from fresh menhaden. Meal is a valuable ingredient in poultry and livestock feeds because of its high protein content (at least 60%). Meal can also be found in pet foods for fish and dogs. Menhaden oil is (or has been) used in cooking oils, margarine, soap, linoleum, waterproof fabrics, and certain types of paint. Menhaden oil is often marketed as a source of omega-3 fatty acids and can be incorporated into food and beverage products as well as dietary supplements. Solubles are the aqueous liquid component remaining after oil removal. In general, most meal producers add the soluble component to the meal to create a product termed "full meal". Solubles can be used in the aquaculture industry as an attractant and as a fertilizer.

#### Internal Waters Processing

Section 306 of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (PL 94-265) allows foreign fish processing vessels to operate within the internal waters of a state with the permission of the Governor of that state. Up to three internal waters processing (IWP) ventures operated within Maine's coastal waters during 1988-1993. Under state jurisdiction, a foreign vessel was permitted to process menhaden caught by US vessels into fish meal and oil during the 1988-1993 fishing seasons. In 1987, two New England-based menhaden vessels began to fish in the Gulf of Maine, landing the catch at a Canadian processing plant. Another Canadian factory in Nova Scotia processed menhaden in 1992 and 1993. No menhaden have been processed in the North Atlantic since the summer of 1993.

#### **1.3.1.2 Bait Fishery**

Menhaden from bait fisheries is primarily harvested with purse seines, pound nets, gill nets, and trawls, with a smaller amount of harvest coming from cast nets, fyke nets, and haul seines. Menhaden are taken for bait in almost all Atlantic coast states and are frequently used for bait in crab pots, lobster pots, and hook and line fisheries (both sport and commercial).

Since 1985, the proportion of menhaden landed as bait has generally increased (Table 9, Figure 10). Reported bait landings averaged 10% of the total Atlantic menhaden landings from 1985-2000 and 20% of total landings from 2001-2016. This increase in the percent of coastal bait landings can be attributed to better data collection in the fishery and a decline in coastal reduction landings. The closure of reduction plants in New England and the Mid-Atlantic may have influenced growth in the bait fishery, making more product available for the lobster and crab pot fisheries, as well as bait for sport fishermen. Additionally, the passage of a net ban in Florida in November 1994 reduced the availability of bait in that state, which may have opened up new markets for menhaden bait caught in Virginia and the Mid-Atlantic States. The appearance of growth in the Atlantic coast bait fishery must be tempered by the knowledge that reporting systems for bait landings have historically been incomplete.

Menhaden bait landings have not always been well-documented leading to an under-estimate of historic harvest. Historically, there have been some well-documented, large-scale, directed bait fisheries for menhaden using gears such as purse seines, pound nets, and gill nets; however, there have also been many small-scale directed bait fisheries, such as those using cast nets and beach seines, which have supplied large quantities of bait and had few, if any, reporting requirements. Estimates of menhaden bait landings have improved over the years as most states implemented reporting requirements for the smaller scale fisheries by the late 2000s. States were required to implement timely reporting as a part of Amendment 2 (2012) in order to monitor quota allocations.

Given the geographic expanse of the menhaden bait fishery, there are regional differences in how and when menhaden are harvested. In the southeast, menhaden landings are dominated by Florida and North Carolina. In Florida, menhaden landings are primarily landed with cast nets since the state implemented a net ban in 1994. Prior to this time, Florida had significant bait landings from gill nets and purse seines. Fishermen in North Carolina use cast nets, gill nets, and pound nets to harvest menhaden. The principal use for menhaden as bait in North Carolina is in the blue crab fishery. In addition, some keep menhaden alive in holding tanks for “slow trolling” of species such as king mackerel. There are no directed menhaden fisheries in South Carolina and Georgia.

Menhaden bait landings in Virginia are dominated by purse seine vessels referred to as ‘snapper rigs’. These vessels range from about 80-135 ft long and primarily sell bait to the sport and crab fisheries. In contrast, the Maryland and Potomac River bait fisheries are primarily executed by pound nets, a large fixed gear. The pound net fishery in the Chesapeake Bay region is carried out by numerous small, non-refrigerated vessels. Maximum hold capacity of these pound net vessels is 9 mt or less, but daily catches are usually well below vessel capacity and are limited by the number of fish encountered in the fixed gear. The majority of these fish supply the local blue crab fishery.

In the Mid-Atlantic, there has been an expansion of the purse seine bait fishery, particularly in New Jersey. The New Jersey menhaden fishery utilizes about 20 carry vessels and about 15 catch vessels per year. Most operations have a catch vessel paired with a specific carry vessel, but some vessels are both catch and carry. Carry vessel length ranges from 59-90 ft and catch vessel length ranges from 40-88 ft. Net length is restricted to 150 fathoms (900 ft) by regulation. In New York and Delaware, menhaden bait landings are primarily caught in pound nets, gill nets, casts, and seines.

In the New England region, purse seine landings in Maine, Massachusetts and Rhode Island account for the majority of the recorded bait landings. The New England operators are fairly small, typically with one harvest vessel, ranging in size from the 30 to 90 ft in length. In Rhode Island, there is a historic floating fish trap fishery which harvests the majority of menhaden landed in the state. In Connecticut, smaller directed gill net fisheries also harvest menhaden. The bulk of menhaden landings for bait in New England are used in the lobster fishery.

### **1.3.2 Recreational Fishery**

Menhaden are important bait in many recreational fisheries and, as a result, some recreational fishermen employ cast nets to capture menhaden or snag them with hook and line.

Recreational harvest is not well captured by the Marine Recreational Information Program (MRIP) because there is not a known direct harvest for menhaden, other than for bait. MRIP intercepts typically capture the landed fish from recreational trips as fishermen come to the dock or on the beach. Since the menhaden caught by recreational fishermen are used as bait during their trip, they typically are not part of the catch that is seen by the surveyor completing the intercept.

From what is known, recreational catch has varied over time with a high of 672.3 mt in 1992 and a low of 12.2 metric tons in 2000. The average harvest between 1981 and 2015 was 206.8 mt. Landings have averaged 382.5 mt between 2011 and 2015. Preliminary recreational landings from 2016 are 845 mt, which would be a new high for the time series (Figure 11).

### **1.3.3 Subsistence Fishing**

No subsistence fisheries for Atlantic menhaden have been identified at this time.

### **1.3.4 Non-Consumptive Factors**

Menhaden provide an important forage base for many fish, bird, and marine mammal species. Please refer to *Section 1.1.2.1 Ecological Benefits*.

### **1.3.5 Interactions with Other Fisheries**

Incidental bycatch of other finfish species in menhaden purse seines has been a topic of interest and concern for many years (Christmas et al., 1960; Oviatt, 1977; Smith, 1896). Past studies have indicated that there is little or no bycatch in the menhaden purse seine fishery; however, there is currently no requirement for at-sea observers.

The Virginia Institute of Marine Science studied bycatch levels of finfish, turtles, and marine mammals in the Atlantic menhaden fishery. Results from that study indicated that bycatch in the 1992 Atlantic menhaden reduction fishery was minimal, comprising about 0.04% by number (Austin et al., 1994). The maximum percentage of bycatch occurred in August (0.14%) while the lowest occurred in September (0.002%). Among important recreational species, bluefish accounted for the largest portion of bycatch (0.0075% of the total menhaden catch). No marine mammals, sea turtles, or other protected species were killed, captured, entangled, or observed during sampling.

Additional data are available from the Gulf of Maine IWP fishery in 1991. Every catch unloaded onto the processing vessel was inspected by a state observer. A total of 93 fish were taken as

bycatch along with roughly 60,000,000 individual menhaden (D. Stevenson, Maine DMR, pers. comm.; as cited in ASMFC 1992).

## **1.4 HABITAT CONSIDERATIONS**

### ***1.4.1 Physical Description of Habitat***

#### ***1.4.1.1 Gulf of Maine***

The Gulf of Maine is a semi-enclosed sea of 36,300 mi<sup>2</sup> (90,700 km<sup>2</sup>) bordered on the northeast, north and west by the coasts of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and the New England states. To the south and east, the Gulf is open to the North Atlantic Ocean; however, Georges Bank forms a partial southern boundary below about 165 ft (50 m). The interior of the Gulf of Maine is characterized by five major deep basins (>600 ft, 200 m) which are separated by irregular topography that includes shallow ridges, banks, and ledges. Basins make up about 30% of the floor area (Thompson, 2010). Retreating glaciers (18,000–14,000 years ago) left behind a variety of patchily distributed sediment types including silt, sand, clay, gravel, and boulders (NMFS, 2015). Major tributary rivers are the St. John in New Brunswick; St. Croix, Penobscot, Kennebec, Androscoggin, and Saco in Maine; and Merrimack in Massachusetts.

The predominantly rocky coast of Maine is characterized by steep terrain and bathymetry, with numerous islands, embayments, pocket beaches, and relatively small estuaries. Tidal marshes and mud flats occur along the margins of these estuaries. Farther south, the coastline is more uniform with few sizable bays, inlets, or islands, but with many small coves. Extensive tidal marshes, mud flats, and sandy beaches along this portion of the coast are gently sloped. Marshes exist along the open coast and within the coves and estuaries.

The surface circulation of the Gulf of Maine is generally counterclockwise, with an offshore flow at Cape Cod which joins the secondary, clockwise gyre on the northern edge of Georges Bank. The Northeast and Great South Channels, which bookend Georges Bank, serve as the primary inflow and outflow channels of marine waters, respectively. Some of the water entering the Northeast Channel flows into the Bay of Fundy; another portion turns west to feed the Maine Coastal Current, initiating the counterclockwise direction of flow. The counterclockwise gyre is more pronounced in the spring when river runoff adds to the southwesterly flowing coastal current. Surface currents reach velocities of 1.5 knots (80 cm/sec) in eastern Maine but gradually diminish to 0.2 knots (10-20 cm/sec) in Massachusetts Bay where tidal amplitude is about 10 ft (3 m) (Thompson, 2010).

There is great seasonal variation in sea surface temperature in the Gulf, ranging from 4°C in March throughout the Gulf to 18°C in the western Gulf and 14°C in the eastern Gulf in August. The Gulf of Maine sea surface temperature has been warming steadily over the last 35 years. In the most recent decade, the warming trend (0.23 °C /year) was faster than 99 percent of the global ocean (Pershing et al., 2015). The warming is related to a northward shift in the Gulf Stream and to changes in the Atlantic Multidecadal Oscillation and Pacific Decadal Oscillation (Pershing et al., 2015). The salinity of the surface layer also varies seasonally, with minimum

values in the west occurring during summer, from the accumulated spring river runoff, and during winter in the east under the influence of runoff from the St. Lawrence River (from the previous spring). With the seasonal temperature and salinity changes, the density stratification in the upper water column also exhibits a seasonal cycle. From well mixed, vertically uniform conditions in winter, stratification develops through the spring and reaches a maximum in the summer. Stratification is more pronounced in the southwestern portion of the Gulf where tidal mixing is diminished.

#### ***1.4.1.2 Mid-Atlantic Region***

The coastal zone of the Mid-Atlantic states varies from a glaciated coastline in southern New England, to the flat and swampy coastal plain of North Carolina. Along the coastal plain, the beaches of the barrier islands are wide, gently sloped, and sandy, with gradually deepening offshore waters. The area is characterized by a series of sounds, broad estuaries, large river basins (e.g., Connecticut, Hudson, Delaware, and Susquehanna), and barrier islands. Conspicuous estuarine features are Narragansett Bay (Rhode Island), Long Island Sound and Hudson River (New York), Delaware Bay (New Jersey and Delaware), Chesapeake Bay (Maryland and Virginia), and the nearly continuous band of estuaries behind barrier islands along southern Long Island, New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina. The complex estuary of Currituck, Albemarle, and Pamlico Sounds behind the Outer Banks of North Carolina (covering an area of 2,500 square miles) is an important feature of the region. Coastal marshes border those estuaries along much of the glaciated coast from Cape Cod to Long Island Sound. Nearly continuous marshes occur along the shores of the estuaries behind the barrier islands.

At Cape Hatteras, the Continental Shelf extends seaward approximately 20 mi (33 km), and gradually widens northward to about 68 mi (113 km) off New Jersey and Rhode Island where it is intersected by numerous underwater canyons. Surface circulation north of Cape Hatteras is generally southwesterly during all seasons, although this may be interrupted by coastal in-drafting and some reversal of flow at the northern and southern extremities of the area. Speeds of drift north of Cape Hatteras are on the order of six miles (9.7 km) per day. There may be a shoreward component to this drift during the warmer half of the year and an offshore component during the colder half. The western edge of the Gulf Stream meanders off Cape Hatteras, sometimes coming within 12 mi (20 km) of the shore; however, it becomes less discrete and veers to the northeast above Cape Cod. Surface currents as high as 4 knots (200 cm/sec) have been measured in the Gulf Stream off Cape Hatteras.

Hydrographic conditions in the Mid-Atlantic region vary seasonally due to river runoff and changing water temperatures. The water column becomes increasingly stratified in the summer and homogeneous in the winter due to fall-winter cooling of surface waters. In the winter, the mean range of sea surface temperatures is 0-7°C off Cape Cod and 1-14°C off Cape Charles (at the southern end of the Delmarva Peninsula). In the summer, the mean range is 15-21°C off Cape Cod and 20-27°C off Cape Charles. The tidal range averages slightly over 3 ft (1 m) on Cape Cod, decreasing to the west. Within Long Island Sound and along the south shore of Long Island, tide ranges gradually increase, reaching 6 ft (2 m) at the head of the Sound and in the New York Bight. South of the Bight, tide ranges decrease gradually to slightly over 3 ft (1 m) at



Cape Hatteras. Prevailing southwest winds during the summer along the Outer Banks often lead to nearshore upwelling of colder bottom water from offshore, so that surface water temperatures can vary widely during that period (15-27°C over a period of a few days).

The waters of the coastal Mid-Atlantic region have a complex and seasonally dependent circulation pattern. Seasonally varying winds and irregularities in the coastline result in the formation of a complex system of local eddies and gyres. Surface currents tend to be strongest in late spring, due to river runoff, and during periods of highest winds in the winter. In late summer, when winds are light and estuarine discharge is minimal, currents tend to be sluggish, and the water column is generally stratified.

#### ***1.4.1.3 South Atlantic Region***

The south Atlantic coastal zone extends in a large oceanic bight from Cape Hatteras south to Biscayne Bay and the Florida Keys. North of Florida, the south Atlantic coastal zone is bordered by a coastal plain that stretches inland for a hundred miles and a broad continental shelf that reaches into the ocean for nearly an equal distance. This broad shelf tapers down to a very narrow and precipitous shelf off the southeastern coast of Florida. The irregular coastline of North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, and eastern Florida is generally endowed with extensive bays and estuarine waters, bordered by nutrient-rich marshlands. Barrier beaches and dunes protect much of the shoreline. Along much of the southern coast from central South Carolina to northern Florida, estuarine salt-marsh is prominent. Most of the east coast of Florida varies little in general form. Sand beaches with dunes are sporadically interrupted by mangrove swamps and low banks of earth and rock.

The movements of oceanic waters along the South Atlantic coast have not been well defined. The surface currents, countercurrents, and eddies are all affected by environmental factors, particularly winds. The Gulf Stream flows along the coast at 6-7 miles per hour (10-11 km/hr). It is nearest to the coast off southern Florida and gradually moves away from the coast as it flows northward. Inshore of the Gulf stream, there is a current that flows southward for most of the year in regions north of Cape Canaveral.

Sea surface temperatures during the winter increase southward from Cape Hatteras to Fort Lauderdale, Florida, with mean minimums ranging from 2-20°C and maximums ranging from 17-26°C. In the summer, the increases are more gradual, ranging north to south from minimums of 21-27°C to maximums of 28-30°C. Mean sea-surface salinity is generally in the range of 34 to 36 ppt year round. Mean tidal range is just over 3 ft (1 m) at Cape Hatteras and increases gradually to about 6-7 ft (2 m) along the Georgia coast. Tides decrease south of Cape Canaveral to 3 ft (1 m) at Fort Lauderdale.

#### ***1.4.2 Environmental Requirements of Atlantic Menhaden***

##### ***1.4.2.1 Temperature, Salinity, and Dissolved Oxygen***

While Atlantic menhaden occur throughout a wide range of physicochemical conditions, several studies have raised questions about the species' environmental limits and optimum conditions.

In particular, studies have noted an affinity of young menhaden for low salinity waters. Wilkens and Lewis (1971) speculated that larval menhaden require low salinity water to metamorphose properly, and Lewis (1966) found that, although larvae metamorphosed in salinities of 15-40 ppt, one-third of the juveniles developed slightly crooked vertebral columns. Furthermore, larvae reared by Hettler (1976) at a lower salinity of 5-10 ppt exhibited significantly higher activity levels, metabolic rates, and growth rates than those reared at 28-34 ppt. Rogers et al. (1984) noted that pre-juveniles of many fishes, including those of *Brevoortia* species, enter estuarine habitats during seasonal peaks of freshwater influx when the area of low salinity and fresh tidal water is greatest.

Studies also suggest that temperature also has an important effect on larval development and dispersion. In the South Atlantic region, sea surface temperature readings during the months of highest egg capture were generally 12-20°C (Walford and Wicklund, 1968). In the North Atlantic, the lowest temperature at which Atlantic menhaden eggs and larvae were collected was between 10 and 13°C (Ferraro, 1980). The temperature range for the Mid-Atlantic region was 0-25°C, but most eggs and larvae were collected at 16-19°C (Kendall and Reintjes, 1975). Studies suggest that the limits of larval temperature tolerance are affected by acclimation time. Survival above 30°C (Lewis and Hettler, 1968) and below 5°C (Lewis, 1965) was progressively extended by acclimation temperatures closer to test values, suggesting that rapid changes to extreme temperatures are more likely to be lethal than prolonged exposure to slowly changing values. Mortality of juvenile Atlantic menhaden to a temperature decrease of 10°C (from 15 to 5°C) was less when temperature was decreased at a rate of 6.7°C /h or lower.

A potential management consideration is that, historically, estuarine zones received freshwater from contiguous wetlands and riverine systems. However, channelization, diking of river courses, ditching and draining of marginal wetlands, and urbanization have reduced the freshwater retention capacities of coastal wetlands. Furthermore, extensive filling of estuarine marshlands has diminished the area receiving runoff in many locations. In combination, these changes cause the rapid discharge of freshwater during brief periods and reduced amounts of freshwater at other times. High inflows, particularly those that occur in early spring after the arrival of pre-juvenile menhaden, can expose fish to extreme fluctuations of temperature, turbidity, and other environmental conditions. Although the effects of altered freshwater flow regimes on Atlantic menhaden are not known, effects on other estuarine dependent, offshore spawned fishes range from disappearance (Rogers et al., 1984) to death (Nordlie et al., 1982).

Dissolved oxygen, particularly at low levels, can also impact the survival of menhaden. Lewis and Hettler (1968) observed increased survival of juveniles at 35.5°C with increased dissolved oxygen (DO) saturation. Burton et al. (1980) reported a mean lethal DO concentration of 0.4 mg/l, but warned against interpretation of this value as “safe”, in view of the interactive nature of environmental factors.

#### **1.4.2.2 Primary Production**

Abundance of YOY juvenile menhaden is strongly and positively correlated with *chl-a* and primary production in the Chesapeake Bay (Houde and Harding, 2009). Although recent

research indicates that age-1+ menhaden may derive most energy from zooplankton food (Lynch et al., 2010; Friedland et al., 2011), it is apparent that YOY menhaden can efficiently filter small phytoplankton (Friedland et al., 2006) and that it is their primary food. The timing, intensity, quality, and spatial variability of the spring phytoplankton bloom in the Chesapeake Bay show high inter-annual variability and are strongly affected by climate (Adolf et al., 2006; Miller and Harding, 2007). This variability in primary production is likely a key factor controlling production potential of young menhaden in estuarine habitats.

#### ***1.4.2.3 Sediments and Turbidity***

Forest clearing, and the removal of the buffer provided by trees, shrubs, plants, and wetlands, has led to changes in sediment loading due to unrestricted stormwater flow (Brush, 1986). This results in erosion that brings increased sediment into estuaries, such as the Chesapeake Bay. In addition, the dramatic increase in impermeable surfaces has also increased runoff, as impervious surfaces amplify storm water discharges into streams (Goetz and Jantz, 2006). One consequence of these changes is that sediment grain size has changed over time so that very fine sediment now predominates, which reduces light penetration. Secchi disk readings from the Chesapeake Bay have steadily declined since 1985 from just over 2 meters to about 1 meter in 2008 (Greer, 2008). Because filter feeding juvenile menhaden can retain particles as small as 5-7  $\mu\text{m}$ , and to a minor extent particles  $<5 \mu\text{m}$ , there is a possibility that menhaden feeding could be compromised (Friedland et al., 1984).

The resulting increased turbidity acts to shade submerged aquatic vegetation (SAV), thus decreasing the extent and composition of SAV beds. Loss of SAV may indirectly affect menhaden by increasing turbidity even further as a result of increased sediment resuspension (Orth et al., 2006), which in turn can lower phytoplankton productivity. SAV has also been shown to exercise control over ecosystem function through nutrient recycling and linkage to fish productivity (Orth et al., 2006; Hughes et al., 2009), which may impact menhaden abundance, although specific impacts are not known at present.

#### ***1.4.2.4 Water Movement***

Currents and circulation features play an important role in cueing reproduction, and in controlling dispersal of larval stages, assuring that some larvae are transported to the coastal estuaries and embayments that serve as juvenile nurseries. Most larval menhaden are found shoreward of the Gulf Stream Front (GSF); those sampled in the GSF, or seaward of it, presumably are rapidly advected northeast and lost to the population although it is possible that warm-core rings and onshore streamers could return some larvae to the shelf (Hare and Govoni, 2005). There is ample evidence, based on observations and models, that coastward transport of larvae is supported by favorable winds and currents on the shelf (Checkley et al. 1988; Werner et al., 1999). Models and observations of advective mechanisms at estuary mouths present a less-clear picture of how menhaden larvae move into estuaries, although it is apparent that winds, tides, and larval behavior control the ingress.

Inter-annual variability in recruitment is believed to be, at least partly, controlled by variability in oceanographic conditions that affect hydrography, circulation, and possibly biological

productivity. Weather and climate patterns are probable drivers of such variability. Wood et al. (2004) demonstrated that prevalence of a late-winter climate pattern that brings dry and warm weather to the Mid-Atlantic region is associated with high recruitment of Atlantic menhaden. This weather pattern may promote favorable shoreward transport or feeding conditions for early-stage menhaden larvae while on the continental shelf.

#### ***1.4.2.5 Substrate and System Features***

The association of Atlantic menhaden with estuarine and nearshore systems during all phases of its life cycle is well documented. It is evident that young menhaden require these food rich waters to survive and grow, and the fishery is concentrated near major estuarine systems. Filling of estuarine wetlands, in addition to exacerbating extremes in environmental conditions, has physically limited the nursery habitat available to Atlantic menhaden and other estuarine-dependent species. The relative importance, however, of different habitat types (i.e. sounds, channels, marshes) and salinity regimes has received little detailed attention (Rogers and Van Den Avyle 1989).

#### ***1.4.3 Identification and Distribution of Essential Habitat***

Estuarine and nearshore waters along the Atlantic coast from Florida to Nova Scotia serve as important habitat for juvenile and/or adult Atlantic menhaden. Within this wide geographic range, hydrographic and circulation features constrain population distribution (MDSG 2009). Adult menhaden distribution is bounded by the Gulf Stream Front on the seaward side and by water temperatures greater than 10°C (MDSG 2009).

Adult Atlantic menhaden spawn in oceanic waters along the continental shelf, as well as in sounds and bays in the northern extent of their range (Judy and Lewis, 1983). Winds and tides transport larvae shoreward from the shelf (Checkley et al., 1988; Werner et al., 1999) toward nursery grounds in the estuaries. Larvae are between one and three months old, usually closer to two months, at first ingress into estuaries (Warlen et al., 2002; MDSG, 2009). After entering the estuary, larvae congregate in large concentrations near the upstream limits of the tidal zone, where they metamorphose into juveniles (June and Chamberlin 1959, Houde 2011).

Historically, Chesapeake Bay was considered to be the most productive nursery area (contributing 69% of Atlantic menhaden recruits [age 1] to the coast wide population), followed by the south Atlantic (17%), and the Mid-Atlantic sections from Maryland to New York (12%) (Ahrenholz et al., 1989; ASMFC, 2004; Anstead et al., 2017). However new research credits the Chesapeake Bay with 30% of age 1 recruits and New England and the southeast estuaries contributing equal portions to the population (Anstead et al., 2016). Furthermore, recruits from all three areas, in the same proportions, have been shown to persist in the population beyond the first year to ages 2-4, therefore becoming part of the reproductive population (Anstead et al. 2017).

#### ***1.4.4 Anthropogenic Impacts on Atlantic Menhaden and Their Habitat***

The human population along the coast is steadily increasing, and the average number of people per square mile in coastal counties has nearly doubled since 1960 (U.S. Census Bureau 2010). Increasing human presence precipitates industrial and municipal expansion, thus intensifying anthropogenic pressure on resources and accelerating competition for use of land and water. Consequently, estuarine and coastal habitats have been significantly reduced and continue to be stressed by dredging, filling, coastal construction, energy plant development, pollution, waste disposal, nutrient loading, and other human-related activities.

Degraded water quality in estuaries threatens critical nursery habitat for young menhaden. Concern has been expressed (Ahrenholz et al., 1987) that the outbreaks of ulcerative mycosis in the 1980s may have been symptomatic of deteriorating water quality in estuarine waters along the east coast. Human population growth and increasing development in the coastal zone are expected to further reduce water quality unless steps are taken to ameliorate their effect on the environment (Cross et al., 1985). Altering habitats and water quality can affect menhaden habitat use and productivity - responses that are magnified in estuaries where human use and biological productivity heavily interact.

Perhaps the most significant physical alteration of the Chesapeake Bay watershed in recent decades has been the increase in impervious surfaces. More than 400,000 hectares are currently categorized as impervious surface and that value continues to climb (Brush 2009). These surfaces increase the nutrient, sediment, and contaminant flow rate to the Chesapeake Bay (Clagett 2007), and exacerbate eutrophication and expansion of hypoxic and anoxic zones. Although not well studied at present, reduced water quality associated with increases in impervious surfaces could diminish habitat quality for menhaden or their predators.

Menhaden fish kills, both human-caused and naturally occurring, are a persistent problem in bays and estuaries throughout the range. Most states keep records of fish kills, documenting water quality, number of fish killed, and likely causes. Localized die-offs often occur due to critically low dissolved oxygen (DO) levels, which may result from a variety of factors including high temperature, low flow, overcrowding, or algal blooms. Infectious diseases, parasites, toxicants, or miscellaneous human activity (e.g. thermal shock or fishing discards) may also cause localized mortality. In Maryland, nearly 50 years of records document annual menhaden kills ranging from tens to tens-of-millions of fish (max est. 47M fish in 1974), caused by a variety of factors from concussive explosions to disease and toxicants from spills or discharge (C. Poukish, MD DNR, pers. comm.). The most common factor was low DO in the presence of algal blooms, which causes an annual spring die-off. In the Neuse and Tar-Pamlico River estuaries in North Carolina, low oxygen events cause significant mortality of Atlantic menhaden and other fish species nearly every summer (R. Wilson Laney, USFWS, pers. Comm.). In Florida, nutrient inputs, exacerbated by low flushing in the Indian River Lagoon, result in Harmful Algal Blooms (HABs) and, ultimately, menhaden kills (K. Smith, FL FWC, pers. comm.).

In recent years the menhaden population appears to be rebounding and expanding to reoccupy its historic geographic range. With more fish returning to areas heavily used and impacted by humans, the potential for fish kills increases. For example, in 2016, tens of thousands of menhaden were killed when a lock closure trapped them in the Shinnecock Canal in New York.

At one time, fish kills may have solely been a natural occurrence, but anthropogenic impacts to water quality and flow have certainly exacerbated the frequency and intensity of these mortality events. State efforts to track fish kills can provide information on patterns and trends. North Carolina, for example, instituted a fish kill investigation procedure in 1996 to collect and track fish kill information. Data is maintained in a central database and is reviewed as part of an effort to monitor water quality trends.

A growing body of literature is beginning to describe shifts in species distributions and spawning locations and seasons, possibly due to a changing climate on the Atlantic coast (e.g. Walsh et al., 2015; Kleisner et al., 2016). Menhaden ingress to estuaries is sensitive to changes in wind patterns and temperatures, which are known to be variable and may be influenced by climate change (Quinlan et al., 1999; Austin, 2002). Moreover, nursery habitats within bays and estuaries are likely to be altered by the effects of climate change, in some cases potentially enhancing menhaden productivity and other cases, resulting in lower production and recruitment. The effects of climate change are predicted to include: increased water temperatures, sea-level rise, and changes in precipitation patterns and climate variability (Sherman et al., 2009). These changes can influence salinity, temperature, and nutrients throughout nursery grounds.

In addition to long-term climate change, the Atlantic coast has also experienced shorter-term, decadal fluctuations in weather, shifting between cold-wet and warm-dry periods. Austin (2002) showed that the 1960s were warmer and wetter than the 1970s and 1990s in the Mid-Atlantic. Menhaden recruitment success tends to be relatively high in years when late winter-spring conditions are warm and dry (Wood, 2000). Although menhaden recruitment has been correlated with the Atlantic Multidecadal Oscillation (Buchheister et al., 2016), the correlation between Chesapeake Bay and southern New England is reversed and the mechanisms of influence are unknown. The generally low recruitment of YOY menhaden in recent years appear to be constrained by frequent cool and wet winter-spring conditions that favor recruitment of anadromous spawners, but not offshore-spawning fishes such as menhaden (Kimmel et al., 2009). It is not certain whether climate change will have positive or negative impacts on the long-term abundance and productivity of menhaden.

#### ***1.4.5 Description of Programs to Protect, Restore, & Preserve Atlantic Menhaden Habitat***

The federal Coastal Zone Management Act provides a framework under which individual coastal states have developed their own coastal habitat protection programs. In general, wholesale dredging and filling are not allowed. Individual development projects are subject to state and federal review and permit limitations. Every Atlantic coast state has a coastal habitat protection program in place (Table 11.27 in ASMFC 1992). These protection programs have

greatly reduced the loss of vital coastal habitat to dredging and filling since the mid-1970s. Virtually all proposals affecting coastal habitat are now reviewed by a variety of local, state, and federal agencies, and wholesale destruction of coastal wetlands is rare. Many important estuarine habitats are now protected as part of various wildlife refuges, national and state parks, and public and private nature preserves. In addition, a federal permit program is conducted by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, generally in cooperation with the state programs. Every state also conducts water quality protection programs under the federal Clean Water Act. National Pollution Discharge Elimination System permits are required for point-source discharges.

Unfortunately, these programs provide much less control over non-point pollution, especially from agricultural and silvicultural activities, and excess nutrient inputs from diverse sources continue to contribute to hypoxic and anoxic conditions in estuarine menhaden habitat. Additional work to more precisely define menhaden habitat parameters for all life stages and to develop accompanying map products is needed to inform diverse multi-agency and project applicant consultations and permitting processes so that further impacts to menhaden habitats are avoided or minimized.

## **1.5 IMPACTS OF THE FISHERY MANAGEMENT PROGRAM**

### ***1.5.1 Biological and Ecological Impacts***

#### ***1.5.1.1 Reference Points***

The adoption of ecosystem reference points (ERPs) will expand the focus of menhaden management by assessing the status of menhaden in relation to other prey and predator species. ERPs will seek to ensure maintenance of a forage base needed to support larger finfish (e.g. striped bass, bluefish, weakfish), coastal birds (e.g. osprey), and marine mammals (e.g. humpback whales). An ecosystem approach to setting reference points for menhaden may also increase the spawning biomass of the menhaden stock, promoting a higher stock abundance along the coast.

Sustained use of the existing single-species reference points using the method outlined in the 2015 Stock Assessment will continue to provide a greater measure of sustainability than the reference points established in Amendment 2; however, these reference points consider the status of menhaden independent of other species. As a result, it is unclear if they are protecting a large enough forage base to support predator populations. Under the current reference points, the menhaden stock is not overfished and overfishing is not occurring.

#### ***1.5.1.2 Total Allowable Catch***

Limiting menhaden harvest through a Total Allowable Catch (TAC) provides a way to maintain the menhaden population above the overfished threshold and below the overfishing threshold. After the TAC is harvested in a given year, the directed fishery closes. This allows for greater protection of the spawning biomass, as opposed to allowing fishing to continue above and beyond the TAC. If properly set and enforced, quotas will prevent overfishing and ensure a

sustainable resource for the future. Maintenance of a sustainable resource will also increase the forage base for commercially and recreationally important predator species.

#### ***1.5.1.3 Quota Allocation***

The purpose of quota allocation in this Amendment is to identify a fair and equitable method through which menhaden quota can be distributed to various fisheries, gear types and jurisdictions. An allocation method which addresses the needs of each user group and is flexible to respond to future changes in the fishery will provide stability for the fishery and resource. It may also reduce the need for other management tools, such as an incidental catch provision or small-scale fishery set aside (*Section 4.3.5: Incidental Catch and Small Scale Fisheries*).

#### ***1.5.1.4 Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Cap***

The intent of the Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Cap is to ensure protection of an important nursery ground for menhaden. Currently, harvest of menhaden by the reduction fishery in the Chesapeake Bay is prohibited when 100% of the cap has been reached. This protection helps support menhaden recruitment in the Bay and protects a forage base for predators such as striped bass.

The Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Cap was originally implemented in 2005 to prevent localized depletion of menhaden. Given the concentrated harvest of menhaden within the Chesapeake Bay, there was concern that localized depletion could be occurring in the Bay. In 2005, the Board established the Atlantic Menhaden Research Program (AMRP) to evaluate the possibility of localized depletion. Results from the peer review report in 2009 were unable to conclude localized depletion is occurring in the Chesapeake Bay and noted that, given the high mobility of menhaden, the potential for localized depletion could only occur on a “relatively small scale for a relatively short time”.

While the AMRP peer review report was not able to provide conclusive evidence that localized depletion is occurring, maintenance of the Chesapeake Bay reduction fishery cap does provide a greater level of protection in the region than the TAC alone.

#### ***1.5.1.5 Data Collection and Reporting Requirements***

This Amendment requires states to implement timely quota monitoring programs so that the harvest of menhaden stays within the TAC and the potential for overages is limited. Furthermore, purse seine or bait seine vessels are required to submit Captain’s Daily Fishing Reports on a daily basis, and states must collect biological samples relative to their level of harvest. This level of reporting is necessary for the implementation of a quota management system, as lengthy delays could lead to quota overages or premature closures of the fishery. Furthermore, continued biological sampling will increase knowledge on the stock’s age structure, improving the precision of menhaden abundance estimates in future stock assessments.



### ***1.5.2 Social and Economic Impacts***

This Amendment includes several measures which could carry social and economic impacts, notably potential changes to the reference points and allocation method. The use of ERPs may affect those who derive value from finfish, coastal birds, or marine mammals which predate upon menhaden. Ensuring a stable forage base for these species could increase their abundances, leading to positive social and economic impacts for individuals, groups, or communities which rely on these resources for consumptive (e.g., commercial or recreational harvest) or non-consumptive (e.g., bird or whale watching) purposes. Individuals who hold non-use values (e.g., existence value from knowing a particular environmental resource exists or bequest value from preserving a natural or cultural heritage for future generations) associated with affected species may also benefit from increased abundances. Estimates of potential economic or social impacts to these stakeholders as a result of ERPs is challenging given complex and dynamic ecological relationships as well as the lack of socioeconomic data, especially for nonmarket goods and services.

For the commercial fisheries, ERPs may lead to changes in the TAC, which could negatively impact the bait and reduction fisheries. The extent and distribution of negative socioeconomic effects arising from changes to the TAC is dependent on price elasticities (responsiveness of demand to a change in price), substitute products, fishing costs, alternative employment opportunities, fishing community structure, and possibly other factors.

Identifying quota allocation methods which are fair and equitable among fishery sectors, gear types, and regions will enhance socioeconomic net benefits if changes in allocation result in higher value use of the menhaden resource. Shifts in allocation, while potentially beneficial overall, could disadvantage individual stakeholders through reductions in harvests, revenues, and profits. Implementation of data collection programs to ensure effective quota monitoring may add additional management costs.

A recently completed socioeconomic study of the commercial bait and reduction fisheries, funded by the ASMFC, contains several findings which elucidate possible social and economic impacts resulting from changes in menhaden management. In this study, researchers interviewed and surveyed industry members to uncover salient themes, analyzed historic landings data to resolve market relationships, performed economic impact analyses to consider the effects of various TAC changes, and conducted a public opinion survey to assess attitudes toward menhaden management (see Whitehead and Harrison, 2017 for the full report). Interviews and surveys of commercial fishers and other industry members found mixed opinions on several subjects; however, many agreed that the demand for menhaden bait, oil, and meal has increased in recent years. Exogenous demand increases, if leading to increases in ex-vessel prices, could benefit menhaden bait and reduction industry members; however, it is important to note that these benefits are unrelated to management actions discussed in this Amendment.

Analysis of historic landings data revealed that prices for menhaden were negatively related to landings levels, but that this relationship was small and insignificant in some instances. In particular, state-level analysis showed ex-vessel price is insensitive to landings. This finding suggests that reductions in the TAC might reduce commercial fishery revenues as decreases in landings are not fully compensated by higher prices. Ex-vessel prices of menhaden are not uniform along the coast, with some states having higher prices than others.

Economic impact analyses of changes to the TAC found income and employment decreases (increases) corresponding to TAC decreases (increases), with the largest impacts concentrated in New Jersey and Virginia. For example, the analysis suggests that when totaling direct, indirect, and induced economic changes in the bait fishery, a 5% increase in the TAC from the 2017 baseline would result in 18 more jobs, a \$476,000 increase in total earnings, and a \$1.7 million increase in total economic output. Looking at the reduction sector, a 5% increase in the TAC from the 2017 baseline is estimated to increase total economic output (includes direct, indirect, and induced economic effects) by \$3.6 million in Northumberland county and add 77 full and part-time jobs. Interestingly, subsequent analysis of coastal county income and employment changes in response to changes in bait landings (not reduction landings) showed little effect, casting some doubt on the conclusion that adjustments in menhaden TAC consistently lead to changes in fishery income and employment in the bait fishery. It may also be that the magnitude of impact is dependent the size of the fishery in each state and the ability of fishermen to harvest other species.

A public opinion survey asked respondents to vote for or against hypothetical TAC changes which led to associated changes in fishery revenues, jobs, and ecosystem services. Results from this survey indicated that the public recognized management tradeoffs and were willing to trade some economic losses for improvements in ecosystem services. For example, survey respondents were willing to forgo \$10.5-12 million in ex-vessel revenue in exchange for positive impacts on gamefish. On the other hand, survey respondents were willing to accept \$4-7 million in additional ex-vessel revenue in exchange for negative impacts to gamefish. The range of results is due to the variety of model configurations used in the analysis. It is also important to note that respondent characteristics and attitudes (ie: knowledge of menhaden, perceived importance of fishery to state) significantly influenced voting patterns.

## **2.0 GOALS AND OBJECTIVES**

### **2.1 HISTORY OF MANAGEMENT**

The first coastwide fishery management plan (FMP) for Atlantic menhaden was approved in 1981 (ASMFC 1981). The 1981 FMP did not recommend or require specific management actions, but provided a suite of options should they be needed. After the FMP was approved, a combination of additional state restrictions, the establishment of local land use rules, and changing economic conditions resulted in the closure of most reduction plants north of Virginia (ASMFC 1992). In 1988, ASMFC concluded that the 1981 FMP had become obsolete and initiated a revision to the plan.

The 1992 Plan Revision included a suite of objectives to improve data collection and promote awareness of the fishery and its research needs (ASMFC 1992). Under this revision, the menhaden program was directed by the Board, which at the time was composed of up to five state directors, up to five industry representatives, one representative from the National Marine Fisheries Service, and one representative from the National Fish Meal and Oil Association.

Amendment 1, passed in 2001, provided specific biological, social/economic, ecological, and management objectives for Atlantic menhaden. No recreational or commercial management measures were implemented as a result of Amendment 1. Representation on the Board was also revised in 2001 to include three representatives from each state in the management unit, including the state fisheries director, a legislator, and a governor's appointee. This restructuring brought the Board's composition in line with others at the Commission. The reformatted Board has passed two amendments and six addenda to the 1992 FMP revision.

Addendum I (2004) addressed biological reference points for menhaden, specified the frequency of stock assessments to be every three years, and updated the habitat section of the FMP.

Addendum II (2005) instituted a harvest cap on the reduction fishery in the Chesapeake Bay. This cap, based on average landings from 2000-2004, was established for the 2006 through 2010 fishing seasons. Addendum II also outlined a series of research priorities to examine the possibility of localized depletion of Atlantic menhaden in the Chesapeake Bay. They included: determining menhaden abundance in Chesapeake Bay; determining estimates of removal of menhaden by predators; exchanging of menhaden between bay and coastal systems; and conducting larval studies.

Addendum III (2006) revised the Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Cap to 109,020 metric tons, which is an average of landings from 2001-2005. Implementation of the cap remained for the 2006 through 2010 fishing seasons. Addendum III also allowed a harvest underage in one year to be added to the next year's quota. As a result, the maximum cap in a given year was extended to 122,740 metric tons.

Addendum IV (2009) extended the Chesapeake Bay harvest cap three additional years (2011-2013) at the same levels as established in Addendum III.

Addendum V (2011) established a new F threshold and target rate based on maximum spawning potential (MSP) with the goal of increasing abundance, spawning stock biomass, and menhaden availability as a forage species.

Amendment 2, approved in December 2012, established a 170,800 metric ton (mt) total allowable catch (TAC) for the commercial fishery beginning in 2013. This TAC represented a 20% reduction from average landings between 2009 and 2011. The 2009-2011 time period was also

used to allocate the TAC among the jurisdictions. In addition, the Amendment established requirements for timely reporting and required states to be accountable for their respective quotas by paying back any overages the following year. The amendment included provisions that allowed for the transfer of quota between jurisdictions and a bycatch allowance of 6,000 pounds per trip for non-directed fisheries that operated after a jurisdiction's quota has been landed. Further, it reduced the Chesapeake Bay reduction fishery harvest cap by 20% to 87,216 metric tons.

At its May 2015 meeting, the Board established an 187,880 mt TAC for the 2015 and 2016 fishing years. This represents a 10% increase from the 2013 and 2014 TAC. In October 2016, the Board approved a TAC of 200,000 mt for the 2017 fishing year, representing a 6.45% increase from the 2015 and 2016 fishing years.

In August 2016, the Board approved Addendum I which added flexibility to the current bycatch provision by allowing two licensed individuals to harvest up to 12,000 pounds of menhaden bycatch when working together from the same vessel using stationary multi-species gear. The intent of this Addendum was to accommodate cooperative fishing practices which traditionally take place in the Chesapeake Bay.

In May 2013, the Board approved Technical Addendum I which established an episodic events set aside program. This program set aside 1% of the coastwide TAC for the New England States (Maine through Connecticut) to harvest Atlantic menhaden when they occur in higher abundance than normal. In order to participate in the program, a state must reach its individual quota prior to September 1, require daily harvester reporting, and implement a trip limit no greater than 120,000 pounds. At its October 2013 meeting, the Board extended the episodic event set aside program through 2015, adding a re-allocation provision that distributes unused set aside as of October 31 to all states based on the same allocation percentages included in Amendment 2. At its May 2016 meeting, the Board again extended the episodic events program until final action on Amendment 3 and added New York as an eligible state to harvest under the program.

At its February 2014 meeting, the Board passed a motion to manage the menhaden cast net fisheries under the bycatch allowance for 2014 and 2015, with the states bearing responsibility for reporting. At its November 2015 meeting, the Board approved a motion to continue the management of cast net fisheries under the bycatch allowance for 2016. In February 2017, the Board extended management of the cast net fishery under the bycatch provision until implementation of Amendment 3.

## **2.2 PURPOSE AND NEED FOR ACTION**

The 2015 Atlantic Menhaden Benchmark Stock Assessment and Peer Review Report categorized the development of ERPs as a high priority for management of the species. Currently, the stock is assessed with single-species biological reference points, which are defined in the 2015 Stock Assessment. While the stock assessment accounts for natural

mortality, this factor alone may not adequately account for the unique and significant ecological services that menhaden provide, or how changes in the population of predator species may impact the abundance of menhaden. ERPs are intended to consider the multiple roles that menhaden play, both in supporting fisheries for human use and their role in the marine ecosystem.

In addition, Amendment 2 requires quota allocations to be revisited every three years. The Atlantic menhaden quota is currently allocated to Atlantic coast jurisdictions based on average landings between 2009 and 2011. In revisiting the allocations, the Board decided to investigate different allocation methods and timeframes given concerns that the current allocation method does not strike a balance between gear types and regions, as well as current and future harvest opportunities. Some states have also expressed concerns about unreported landings during the baseline years and the administrative burden of managing small allocations, the cost of which may outweigh the value of the fishery they are allocated.

In order to consider the implementation of ERPs as well as changes to the allocation method and timeframe, the Board is considering changes in the management tools used to regulate the fishery.

### **2.3 GOAL**

Amendment 3 to the Interstate Fishery Management Plan for Atlantic Menhaden replaces Amendment 2 to the 1981 FMP for Atlantic Menhaden.

The goal of Amendment 3 is to manage the Atlantic menhaden fishery in a manner which equitably allocates the resource's ecological and economic benefits between all user groups. The primary user groups include those who extract and utilize menhaden for human use, those who extract and utilize predators which rely on menhaden as a source of prey, and those whose livelihood depends on the health of the marine ecosystem. Pursuit of this goal will require a holistic management approach which allocates the resource in a method that is biologically, economically, and socially sound in order to protect the resource and those who benefit from it.

### **2.4 OBJECTIVES**

The following objectives are intended to support the goal of Amendment 3.

- Maintain the Atlantic menhaden stock at levels which sustain viable fisheries and support predators which depend on the forage base.
- Ensure sufficient menhaden spawning stock biomass to prevent stock depletion and recruitment failure.
- Construct regulations based on the best available science and coordinate management efforts among the Atlantic coast jurisdictions.
- Develop a management program which ensures fair and equitable access to the fishery for all regions and gear types.

- Support a greater understanding of menhaden biology and multi-species interactions that may bear upon predator-prey dynamics.
- Maintain existing culture and social features of the fishery to the extent possible.

## **2.5 MANAGEMENT UNIT**

The management unit for Amendment 3 is defined as the range of Atlantic menhaden within U.S. waters of the northwest Atlantic Ocean, from the estuaries eastward to the offshore boundary of the Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ). This definition is consistent with recent stock assessments which treat the entire resource in U.S. waters of the northwest Atlantic as a single stock.

### ***2.5.1 Management Area***

The management area for Amendment 3 shall be the entire Atlantic coast distribution of the resource from Maine through Florida.

## **2.6 REFERENCE POINTS**

### ***2.6.1 History of Reference Points***

#### ***2.6.1.1 Amendment 1 Reference Points***

The reference points outlined in Amendment 1 (2001) were developed from the historic spawning stock per recruit (SSB/R) relationship. As such,  $F_{REP}$  was selected as the  $F_{threshold}$ , representing replacement level of stock, and  $F_{target}$  was based on  $F_{MAX}$ , representing the maximum fishing mortality before the process of recruitment overfishing begins. The Board also adopted a spawning stock biomass target, a proxy for  $B_{MSY}$  (the biomass that allows the fish stock to produce maximum sustainable yield), and a spawning stock biomass threshold.

#### ***2.6.1.2 Addendum 1 Reference Points***

Based on the 2003 Benchmark Stock Assessment for Atlantic menhaden, the reference points were modified per the recommendation of the TC (ASMFC 2004). The TC recommended using population fecundity (number of maturing or ripe eggs) as a more direct measure of reproductive output of the population compared to spawning stock biomass (the weight of mature females). For Atlantic menhaden, older menhaden release more eggs than younger menhaden per unit of female biomass. By using the number of eggs released, more reproductive importance is given to older fish in the population. The TC also recommended modifications to the fishing mortality ( $F$ ) target and threshold. Specifically, the TC recommended continued use of  $F_{REP}$  as the  $F_{threshold}$ , but estimated it using fecundity per recruit rather than the SSB per recruit. They also recommended that the  $F_{target}$  be based on the 75<sup>th</sup> percentile. This approach was consistent with the approach used for the  $F_{threshold}$ . For biomass (or egg) benchmarks, the TC recommended maintaining the approach used in Amendment 1.

#### **2.6.1.3 Addendum V Reference Points**

In November 2011, Addendum V was approved, which established an interim fishing mortality threshold of  $F_{15\%MSP}$  and target of  $F_{30\%MSP}$ , where MSP is the maximum spawning potential.

#### **2.6.1.4 Amendment 2 Reference Points**

The Board adopted an interim biomass threshold of  $SSB_{15\%MSP}$  and target of  $SSB_{30\%MSP}$  to match the interim fishing mortality reference points adopted through Addendum V.

#### **2.6.1.5 2015 Benchmark Stock Assessment Reference Points**

As a part of the 2015 Stock Assessment, the TC recommended that the Board adopt reference points based on the maximum and median geometric mean fishing mortality rate for ages 2-4 during 1960-2012. The 1960-2012 time period represents a time with little to no restrictions on total harvest in which the population appears to have been sustainable given that the population did not experience collapse. Because the fisheries have dome-shaped selectivity, which varies by fleet over time, the age at full fishing mortality changes over time. Ages 2-4 represent the ages of fully selected fishing mortality rates depending upon the year and fishery (i.e., bait and reduction). The Board accepted these updated reference points following approval of the 2015 Stock Assessment for management use.

#### **2.6.1.6 2017 Stock Assessment Update**

Using the method outlined in the 2015 Stock Assessment (*Section 2.6.1.5*), the 2017 Stock Assessment Update determined the overfishing threshold and target to be  $F_{21\%MSP}$  and  $F_{36\%MSP}$ , respectively. The overfished threshold and target were calculated to be  $FEC_{21\%MSP}$  and  $FEC_{36\%MSP}$ , respectively.

### **2.6.2 ASMFC Multi-Species Management Efforts**

In May 2010, the Board tasked the Multi-Species Technical Committee (MSTC), along with the Atlantic Menhaden TC, with developing alternative reference points for menhaden that account for predation. These groups led to a reformation of the subcommittee that updated and refined the Multispecies Virtual Population Analysis (MSVPA). The MSVPA-X model generated a natural mortality matrix which could be input to the single-species menhaden assessment. While this approach was attempted for several Atlantic menhaden stock assessments, the Board tasked this group with developing ERPs for menhaden using multispecies models. This joint subcommittee was eventually renamed the Biological Ecological Reference Points Workgroup (BERP Workgroup) because model consideration for the Board task expanded beyond the MSVPA. The overarching goal of the BERP Workgroup is to develop menhaden-specific ERPs that account for the abundance of menhaden and the species role as a forage fish.

In the *Ecological Reference Points for Atlantic Menhaden* report, the BERP Workgroup presented a suite of preliminary ERP models and ecosystem monitoring approaches for feedback as part of the 2015 Benchmark Stock Assessment (Appendix E, SEDAR 40 Stock Assessment Report). In this report, the BERP Workgroup recommended the use of facilitated workshops to develop specific ecosystem and fisheries objectives to drive further development of ERPs for Atlantic menhaden. This Ecosystem Management Objectives Workshop (EMOW)

contained a broad range of representation including Commissioners, stakeholders, and technical representatives to provide various perspectives on Atlantic menhaden management. The EMOW identified potential ecosystem goals and objectives that were reviewed and approved by the Board. The BERP Workgroup then assessed the ability of each preliminary ERP model to address the identified management objectives and performance measures, and selected models accordingly.

Currently, the BERP Workgroup is evaluating this suite of multispecies models to ensure they are able to generate ERPs which meet as many management objectives as possible. One of the models under consideration is a Bayesian surplus production model with a time-varying population growth rate. This model estimates the trend in total Atlantic menhaden stock biomass and fishery exploitation rate by allowing the population growth rate to fluctuate annually in response to changing environmental conditions. The approach produces dynamic, maximum sustainable yield-based ERPs that account for the forage services menhaden provide. Another production model being evaluated is a Steele-Henderson model, which permits non-fisheries effects (predation and environmental) to be quantified and incorporated into the single-species stock assessments. As a result, fixed and time-varying ecological thresholds can be estimated. This approach is not intended to replace more complex multispecies ecosystem assessment models, but rather to expand the scope of the single-species assessments to include the effects of fishing, predation, and environmental effects. Finally, a multispecies statistical catch-at-age model is being considered. In this approach, single-species models are linked using trophic calculations to provide a predator-prey feedback between the population models. The model is believed to be an improvement from the existing MSVPA because the use of statistical techniques may help to estimate many of the model parameters while incorporating the inherent uncertainty in the data. An external model being considered is an Ecopath with Ecosim model; however, the application of this model is to explore tradeoffs, not quota setting advice. For example, this model could be used to project fishery performance under the various reference points produced from the other multi-species models.

The development of menhaden-specific ERPs is expected to continue over the next couple of years. In 2017, the BERP Workgroup will finish their review of the merits of each modeling approach and decide which models are appropriate frameworks for menhaden ERPs. In 2018, the BERP Workgroup will hold data workshops to collect, select, and standardize the data that will be used as model inputs. This will include data that pertains not only to menhaden abundance but also the abundance of species such as bluefish, striped bass, and other prey species. In early 2019, assessment workshops will be held to review preliminary model results and in the fall of 2019, the multi-species models will be peer-reviewed, along with the current single-species model, which has traditionally been used for menhaden management. This will allow for direct comparison between the two modeling approaches. Table 10 outlines the current schedule for the BERP Workgroup.



### ***2.6.3 External Guidelines for the Management of Forage Fish***

In addition to the menhaden-specific ERPs, which are being developed by the BERP Workgroup, there are also precautionary guidelines for developing ERPs for forage fish in general. These guidelines are based on a series of models that look at a variety of forage fish species across diverse ecosystems. An advantage of these guidelines is that they are readily available for use and provide a precautionary approach to the management of forage fish. However, given they are based on a variety of species and regions, the guidelines are not specific to the Atlantic menhaden stock and, as a result, make generalizations regarding stock recruit relationships and the prevalence of menhaden in predator diets.

One guideline for the management of forage fish species is the 75% rule-of-thumb, which recommends that forage fish populations be maintained at three-fourths of their unfished biomass levels to lower impacts on marine ecosystems (Smith et al., 2011). The peer-reviewed analysis investigated five regions around the world to determine ecosystem impacts of fishing low trophic level species. While results varied among forage fish species, in general, the analysis found that the proportion of ecological groups impacted increased with the depletion of forage fish. Relative abundance of the forage fish species in comparison to other prey species and food web connectivity were found to be important factors in determining the level of impact on other ecological groups. The study concluded that a target of 75% unfished biomass for forage fish species would reduce impacts on other species while maintaining fisheries yields at roughly 80% of their current levels. Menhaden was not a species included in this study.

The Lenfest Ocean Program, a grant-making program managed by The Pew Charitable Trusts, has also developed guidelines for the development of forage fish ERPs. In their 2012 report by Pikitch et al., Lenfest describes how they used a suite of 10 previously published Ecopath with Ecosim models to assess the impacts of forage fish harvest on a variety of ecosystems. The Chesapeake Bay was a region modeled in this analysis. Various management strategies which specify fishing mortality were run in the Ecopath with Ecosim models to determine impacts on predator populations. From these results, a general equation was developed to predict predator responses to forage fish harvest. The analysis recommends a hockey stick control rule in which fishing mortality is dependent on stock size but would not exceed half of the forage species natural mortality rate. Maximum allowable fishing mortality would occur when the stock is at carrying capacity (unfished biomass) and  $F$  declines linearly to zero when biomass falls below 40% of unfished biomass. This report was reviewed by three external reviewers; however, the full report has not been reviewed by a scientific journal.

Although generalized forage fish models may provide interim guidance on how to manage menhaden while ERPs are developed, some contend that harvest policies for lower trophic level species should be based on models specific to the species of interest, even in the interim. Hilborn et al. (2017) investigated eleven species of U.S. forage fish, including Atlantic menhaden, to determine what factors should be analyzed when assessing the impacts of fishing lower trophic level species on predators. Given spawner-recruit data indicates good year classes can come from both small and large stock sizes, Hilborn et al. (2017) states that

recruitment is likely dependent on environmental conditions and stock abundance may be variable even in the absence of fishing. Further, the paper states that precautionary guidelines may not consider the size of prey eaten by various predator species, versus those that are harvested by the fishery. Hilborn et al. (2017) also notes that the spatial distribution of forage fish in relation to the location of predators may be a critical factor, particularly if there are 'core' areas of forage fish abundance on which predators are dependent. As a result, Hilborn et al. (2017) contends that harvest control strategies should include these factors (i.e. natural variability of forage fish abundance, size selectivity of predators, spatial distribution of forage fish) when assessing the impact of forage fish harvest on predator species.

In summary, there is varied advice on how to manage forage fish species. While some support the use of precautionary guidelines to manage forage fish until ERPs can be developed, others contend that species-specific models are needed to account for natural population variability and changes in spatial distribution.

#### ***2.6.3.1 Calculation of Reference Point Values for External Forage Fish Guidelines***

Draft Amendment 3 considers the use of external forage fish guidelines as interim reference points while the BERP continues to develop menhaden-specific ERPs. Values for the interim reference points were calculated based on the total biomass of the stock and are reported in Table 1. To allow for the comparison of the various reference point options on a common scale, the fishing mortality values are reported as biomass-weighted averages over the entire population (ages 0-6+). This means that the fishing mortality experienced by each age class is weighted by the total biomass of that age class. This differs from how the single species reference points are reported in the stock assessment as they are based on the mean fishing mortality values over ages 2-4 (the most heavily exploited age classes). It is important to note that the greatest amount of menhaden biomass is concentrated in ages 0 and 1; however, the greatest level of fishing mortality occurs on ages 2 through 4. When calculating fishing mortality across all age groups, some of which are not heavily exploited, the resulting fishing mortality value is lower than what would be calculated on ages 2-4. As a result, fishing pressure on ages 2-4 would have to significantly increase in order to see an effect on the average fishing mortality experienced by the total population.

For a full description of the reference point calculations, see Appendix 1.

#### ***2.6.4 Definition of Overfishing and Overfished/Depleted***

The Board will evaluate the current status of the Atlantic menhaden stock with respect to its reference points. Changes to the reference points can be made through Board action following a peer-reviewed stock assessment or through Adaptive Management (*Section 4.6*). The Board can adopt any advice of the stock assessment report or peer review report. Reference points can be recalculated during an update or benchmark stock assessment.

Threshold reference points are the basis for determining stock status (i.e., whether overfishing is occurring or if a stock is overfished). When the fishing mortality rate ( $F$ ) exceeds the  $F_{\text{threshold}}$ ,

then overfishing is occurring. This means that the rate of removal of fish by the fishery exceeds the ability of the stock to replenish itself. When the biomass or reproductive output (measured as population fecundity) falls below the threshold, then the stock is overfished, meaning there is insufficient mature female biomass or egg production to replenish the stock.

Reference points will direct the Board on when additional management measures are needed in the menhaden fishery. If the current  $F$  exceeds the threshold level, the Board will take steps to reduce  $F$  to the target level. If current  $F$  exceeds the target, but is below the threshold, the Board may consider steps to reduce  $F$  to the target level. If current  $F$  is below the target  $F$ , then no action is necessary to reduce  $F$ . Similarly, if the current biomass/fecundity is below the threshold level, the Board will take steps to increase biomass/fecundity to the target level; if current biomass/fecundity is below the target, but above the threshold, the Board may consider steps to increase biomass/fecundity to the target level. If current biomass/fecundity is above the target biomass/fecundity, then no action is necessary to increase biomass/fecundity.

#### Option A: Single-Species Reference Points

Single-species reference points are used to manage the Atlantic menhaden fishery. Single-species reference points for the Atlantic menhaden population are based on the maximum and median geometric mean fishing mortality rate for ages 2-4 during 1960-2012. Using this method, the 2017 Stock Assessment Update found the fishing mortality target and threshold for Atlantic menhaden to be  $F_{36\%MSP}$  and  $F_{21\%MSP}$  and the corresponding fecundity target and threshold for Atlantic menhaden to be  $FEC_{36\%MSP}$  and  $FEC_{21\%MSP}$ . As of 2016, the terminal year of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update, the stock is not overfished and overfishing is not occurring (Table 1, Figure 2). Under this option, the development of ERPs would not be pursued.

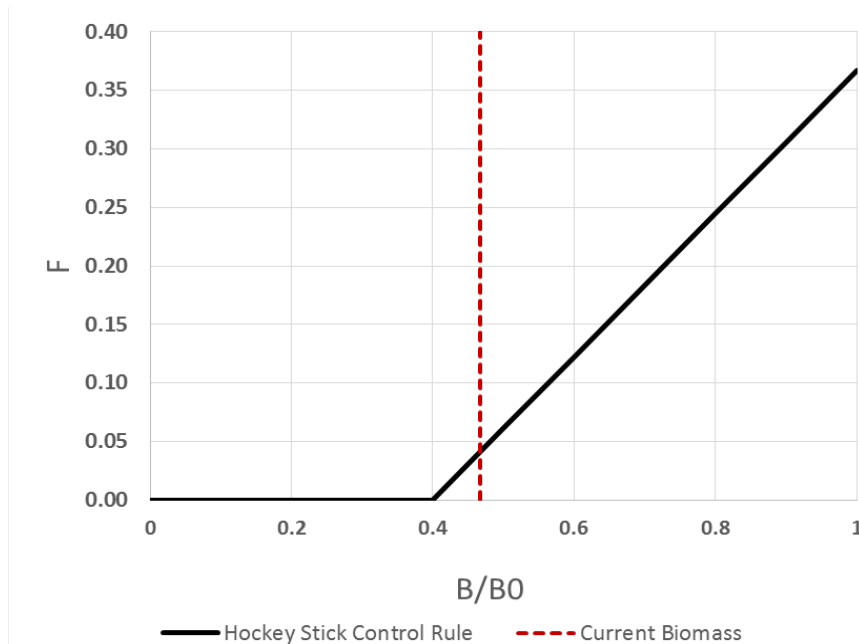
#### Option B: BERP Workgroup Continues to Develop Menhaden-Specific ERPs with Interim Use of Single-Species Reference Points

Under this option, single-species reference points are used to manage the Atlantic menhaden fishery while the BERP Workgroup continues to develop menhaden-specific ERPs. The single-species reference points used in the interim match those described above in Option A. As of 2016, the terminal year of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update, the stock is not overfished and overfishing is not occurring (Table 1, Figure 2). The expected timeline for completion of ERPs is late 2019, as outlined in *Section 2.6.2*.

#### Option C: BERP Workgroup Continues to Develop Menhaden-Specific ERPs with Interim Use of Pikitch et al. Reference Points

Under this option, a hockey stick harvest control rule is used to manage the Atlantic menhaden fishery while the BERP Workgroup continues to develop menhaden-specific ERPs. Under the hockey stick control rule, fishing mortality does not exceed one half of the natural mortality rate when stock size is equal to unfished biomass. As the biomass decreases from  $B_0$  (unexploited biomass), the fishing rate linearly decreases along the control rule. If biomass falls below 40% unfished biomass ( $B/B_0 < 0.4$ ), fishing is prohibited. Figure 1 shows the hockey stick control rule applied to Atlantic menhaden. Current biomass from the 2017 Stock Assessment Update is  $B/B_0 = 0.467$ , which is above the biomass threshold of  $B/B_0 = 0.4$ . As a result, the stock

is not overfished. Should biomass fall below  $B/B_0=0.4$ , fishing would stop and a moratorium would be put in place. The target fishing mortality rate corresponding to current biomass ( $B/B_0=0.467$ ) is 0.041. As of the terminal year of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update, the current fishing mortality rate is  $F_{2016}=0.204$ . This is above the fishing mortality rate recommended by the hockey-stick control rule but below the threshold of  $F=1/2M=0.367$ . This would indicate that fishing is higher than it should be at current biomass levels and a TAC should be set with the goal of achieving  $F=0.041$ .



**Figure 1:** The Pikitch et al. (2012) hockey stick harvest control rule applied to Atlantic Menhaden. The black line represents the control rule and is defined by the points  $(B=B_0, F=0.5M)$  and  $(B=0.4*B_0, F=0)$ , where  $B_0$  is the unexploited biomass. When biomass falls below 40% unfished biomass, fishing is prohibited and the black line is horizontal. The red dotted line represents the current biomass as of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update. The red dotted line intersects the black line at  $(B/B_0=0.467, F=0.041)$ .

#### Option D: BERP Workgroup Continues to Develop Menhaden-Specific ERPs with Interim Use of 75% Rule of Thumb

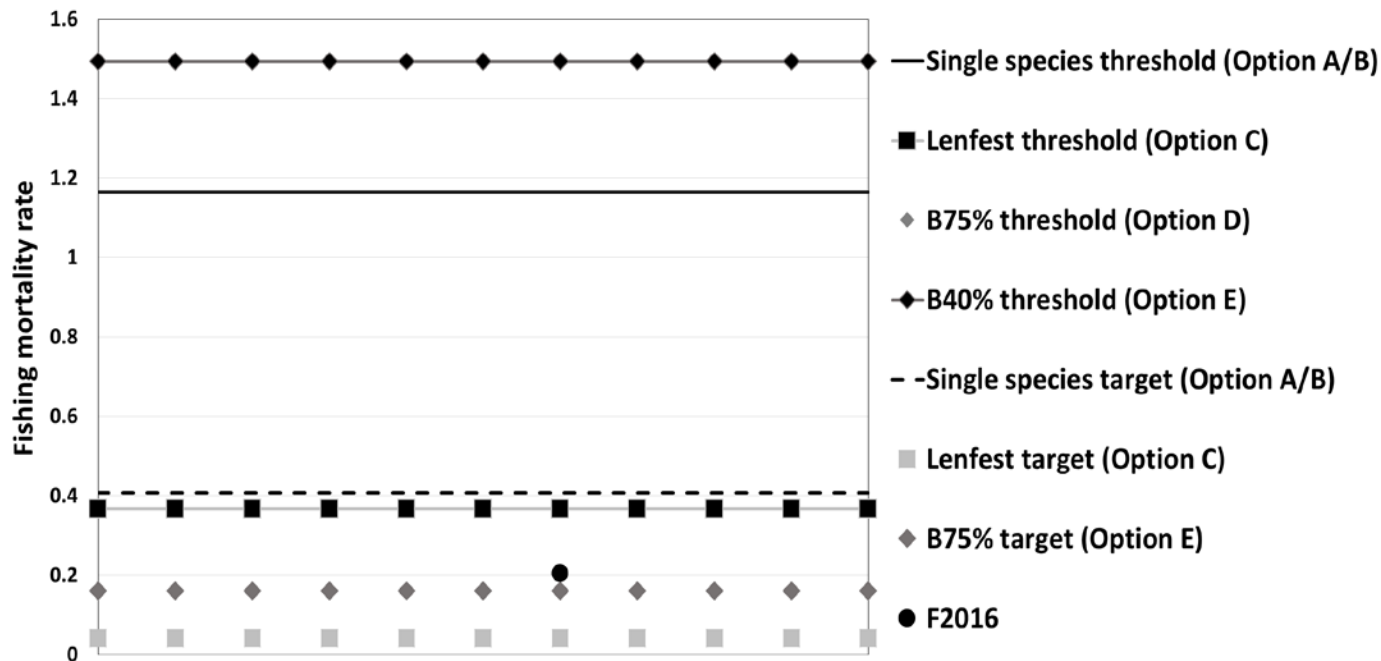
Under this option, the 75% rule of thumb is used to manage the Atlantic menhaden fishery while the BERP Workgroup continues to develop menhaden-specific ERPs. Under the 75% rule of thumb, a fishing mortality rate is established to achieve 75% unfished biomass per recruit. Based on results of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update, the fishing mortality rate that achieves the 75% unfished biomass is  $F=0.160$ . As of 2016, the terminal year of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update,  $F_{2016}=0.204$  which is above this reference point (Table 1, Figure 2), indicating a reduction in fishing mortality would be needed.

### Option E: BERP Workgroup Continues to Develop Menhaden-Specific ERPs with Interim Use of 75% Target, 40% Threshold

Under this option, a  $F_{\text{target}}$  that achieves 75% unfished biomass and a  $F_{\text{threshold}}$  which achieves 40% unfished biomass are used to manage the Atlantic menhaden fishery while the BERP Workgroup continues to develop menhaden-specific ERPs. Based on results of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update, the  $F_{\text{target}}$  that achieves 75% unfished biomass is 0.160, and the  $F_{\text{threshold}}$  that achieves 40% unfished biomass is 1.493. As of the terminal year of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update,  $F_{2016}=0.204$ , which is above the target but below the threshold (Table 1, Figure 2), indicating overfishing is not occurring.

**Table 1:** Reference point alternatives presented in Options A through E and the current F-based reference points for the terminal year of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update. The single-species reference point values shown in this table are reported in a different currency then those reported in the Assessment Update report so that the various reference point options can be compared on a common scale. More specifically, all fishing mortality rates in the table are averaged over total biomass (includes ages 0 through 6) and weighted by age. In contrast, the single-species reference point values shown in *Section 1.2.3: Current Stock Status* are based on the geometric mean fishing mortality rates for ages 2-4.

Reference Point	Fishing Mortality Rule	Resulting Biomass-Weighted F
Single-species reference points (Options A and B)	$F=F_{21\%MSP}$	1.164 (threshold)
	$F=F_{36\%MSP}$	0.408 (target)
Pikitch et al. reference points (Option C)	$F=0.5M$	0.367 (threshold)
	F at current $B/B_0$	0.041 (target)
75% rule of thumb (Option D)	$F=F_{75\%B_0}$	0.160
75% target with 40% threshold (Option E)	$F=F_{40\%B_0}$	1.493 (threshold)
	$F=F_{75\%B_0}$	0.160 (target)
Current status	$F_{2016}$	0.204



**Figure 2:** Comparison between the reference point alternatives presented in Options A through E and the current fishing mortality rate from the terminal year of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update. This figure plots the values presented in Table 1 and provides a visual representation of the reference point options.

### 2.6.5 Stock Rebuilding Program

If it is determined that the Atlantic menhaden resource is experiencing overfishing or has become overfished, the Board will initiate and develop a rebuilding schedule.

## 3.0 MONITORING PROGRAM SPECIFICATION

In order to achieve the goals and objectives of Amendment 3, the collection and maintenance of quality data is necessary.

### 3.1 COMMERCIAL CATCH AND LANDINGS PROGRAM

The reporting requirements for the Atlantic menhaden fishery are based on Captains Daily Fishing Reports (CDFRs) and a Board approved method for timely quota monitoring (*Section 3.1.2*). ASMFC, National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), US Fish & Wildlife Service (USFWS), the New England, Mid-Atlantic, and South Atlantic Fishery Management Councils, and all the Atlantic coastal states have developed a coastwide fisheries statistics program called the Atlantic Coastal Cooperative Statistics Program (ACCSP). A minimum set of reporting requirements for fishermen and dealers has been developed as the standard for data collection on the Atlantic coast.

### **3.1.1 Reduction Fishery Catch Reporting Process**

Daily vessel unloads (in thousands of standard fish) are emailed to NMFS each day. Harvest by the Reedville menhaden fleet is reported through Captains Daily Fishing Reports (CDFRs), which are deck logbooks that are maintained by the Virginia reduction purse-seine vessels. CDFRs are an important tool to monitor reduction harvest in the Chesapeake Bay so that harvest does not exceed the Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Cap (*Section 4.3.7*).

Total removals by area are calculated at the end of the fishing season. At-sea catches from the CDFRs are summed by vessel, and compared to total vessel unloads from company catch records. Individual at-sea sets are then multiplied by an adjustment factor (company records/at-sea estimates). Adjusted catches by set are converted to metric tons, and summed by fishing area. Catch totals are reported by ocean fishing areas and the Chesapeake Bay Bridge Tunnel delineates catches inside and outside of the Chesapeake Bay.

A NMFS port agent samples purse-seine catches dockside in Reedville, VA throughout the fishing season (May through December), providing data for age composition determination.

### **3.1.2 Bait Fishery Catch Reporting Process**

Quota monitoring, whether for a state, region, coast, fleet, or disposition is dependent upon the strength of state specific monitoring programs. As a part of Amendment 2, each state was required to implement a timely quota monitoring system in order to maintain menhaden harvest within the TAC and minimize the potential for overages. Table 11 outlines the reporting requirements of each jurisdiction under Amendment 2.

In order to monitor the menhaden quota allocations prescribed in Amendment 3, states must, at a minimum, maintain the current quota monitoring system in place. States must require menhaden purse seine and bait seine vessels (or snapper rigs) to submit CDFR's or similar daily trip level reports. Mandatory reporting requirements will be reviewed as a part of the annual fishery review (*Section 5.3 Compliance Reports*). States which habitually exceed their quota should assess the effectiveness of their current reporting program and make changes as necessary (e.g. increase the frequency of reporting). It is recommended that states collect the following ACCSP data elements: (1) trip start date; (2) vessel identifier; (3) individual fisherman identifier; (4) dealer identification; (5) trip number; (6) species; (7) quantity; (8) units of measurement; (9) disposition; (10) county or port landed; (11) gear; (12) quantity of gear; (13) number of sets; (14) fishing time; (15) days/hours at sea; (16) number of crew; and (17) area fished. See Tables 12 and 13 for details on these data elements.

If an allocation method is implemented which does not have a jurisdictional component, states must work to report landings via the Standard Atlantic Fisheries Information System (SAFIS). Specifically, menhaden landings must be reported through SAFIS so that regional, fleet, disposition, or coastwide quotas may be monitored in near real-time. SAFIS is an electronic platform which allows fishermen and dealers to submit commercial landings reports into a

single database. This system, which meets ACCSP data standards, allows managers to monitor landings and appropriately respond when a quota is met. It also fulfills state and federal reporting requirements, and allows fishermen and dealers to access previous data submissions. States may choose to implement either a one ticket or two ticket system; however, the system must be comprehensive to all fishermen who are required to report through SAFIS. Reports should include: date, species landed, quantity landed, units of measure, disposition (bait or reduction), state landed, and gear type. Gear type will be critical if an allocation option is chosen which divides quota by fleet-capacity. It is recommended that trip-level reports be submitted to SAFIS, at a minimum, on a weekly basis. Fleets which are managed under a soft cap do not have to report landings to SAFIS; however, states must monitor these landings and report them as part of the Annual Compliance Report.

For jurisdictions which have a statutory requirement that landings be submitted to the state, landings reports may be subsequently uploaded to SAFIS following reporting to the state. If a state is unable to implement SAFIS reporting by the start of the 2018 fishing year, that state must submit landings reports to ASMFC so that a regional, fleet, sector, or coastwide quota may be monitored in 2018. All states must implement SAFIS reporting by 2019. Per *Section 4.5.3.1*, New Hampshire, Pennsylvania, South Carolina, and Georgia are exempt from timely quota monitoring and are not required to report through SAFIS.

Any changes to a state's current quota monitoring program must be reviewed by the PDT and approved by the Board.

#### **3.1.2.1 Incidental Catch Reporting**

Landings of menhaden under *Section 4.3.5: Incidental Catch and Small Scale Fisheries* must be reported as a part of the Annual Compliance Report. Landings of menhaden after the directed fishery has closed are required to be reported through the timely reporting system outlined in *Section 3.1.2*. The exception to this rule is if Option E: Small-Scale Fishery Set Aside is implemented; under this option, landings by small-scale gears are not required to be reported to SAFIS, but states must monitor landings and report them as a part of the Annual Compliance Report.

#### **3.1.2.2 Episodic Events Reporting**

States participating in the Episodic Events Program (*Section 4.3.6*) must implement daily trip level harvester reporting. Each state must track landings, either through state landings reports or SAFIS, and submit weekly reports to ASMFC staff. As the set aside is used, staff may request states submit reports on a more frequent basis, in order to avoid overages.

### **3.2 RECREATIONAL FISHERY CATCH REPORTING PROCESS**

The Marine Recreational Information Program (MRIP) contains estimated Atlantic menhaden catches from 1981-2016. Recreational harvest of menhaden was previously collected through the Marine Recreational Fisheries Statistics Survey (MRFSS), which was a recreational data collection program used from 1981-2003. The MRFSS program was replaced by MRIP in 2004



and was designed to provide more accurate and timely reporting as well as greater spatial coverage. The MRFSS and MRIP programs were simultaneously conducted in 2004-2006 and this information was used to calibrate past MRFSS recreational harvest estimates against MRIP recreational harvest estimates. Recreational catches of menhaden were downloaded from <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/st1/recreational/queries/index.html> using the query option.

An online description of MRIP survey methods can be found here:  
<http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/recreational-fisheries/index#meth>

### **3.3 FOR-HIRE FISHERY CATCH REPORTING PROCESS**

ACCSP standards allow for the use of MRIP for-hire sampling or a census system such as ACCSP's eTrips. For-hire sampling provides bimonthly data but eTrips can provide data within a 24-hour period.

### **3.4 SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC COLLECTION PROGRAMS**

Data on a number of variables relevant to social and economic dimensions of menhaden fisheries are collected through existing ACCSP data collection programs and MRIP; however, no explicit mandates to collect socioeconomic data for menhaden currently exist. In addition to landed quantities, commercial menhaden harvesters and dealers may report ex-vessel prices or value, fishing and landing locations, landing disposition, and a variety of measures capturing fishing effort. MRIP regularly collects information on recreational fishing effort and landings, and occasionally gathers socioeconomic data on angler motivations and expenditures; however, menhaden which are caught and then subsequently used as recreational bait are not always effectively captured in the survey.

A recent socioeconomic study of commercial menhaden fishery was conducted to collect information on the bait and reduction sectors and help inform management decisions (Whitehead and Harrison 2017). As a part of the study, researchers interviewed 43 industry members from both the bait and reduction fisheries to better understand gear usage, substitute products, market changes, and fishing community characteristics. Those interviewed include commercial fishermen, bait dealers, bait shop owners, and reduction facility managers. The study also performed county level, state-level, and coastwide analysis on menhaden landings and ex-vessel value to determine socioeconomic trends in the fishery. In addition, an economic impact analysis was conducted to determine effects (including direct, indirect, and induced impacts) from changes to the TAC. Finally, a public opinion survey was conducted in eight states to determine the public's tradeoff between economic increases and ecosystem services. Over 2,000 members of the public participated in the survey.

While this socio-economic study helped provided a more complete picture of the menhaden commercial fishery, information on factors such as fishing costs, employment levels, processing and distribution are not collected regularly for commercial menhaden fisheries. This information would be useful for future socioeconomic analyses.

### **3.5 BIOLOGICAL DATA COLLECTION PROGRAMS**

#### ***3.5.1 Fishery-Dependent Data Collection***

##### ***3.5.1.1 Reduction Fishery***

The Beaufort Laboratory of the Southeast Fisheries Science Center conducts biological sampling of the Atlantic menhaden reduction fishery (Smith 1991). The program began sampling in the Mid-Atlantic and Chesapeake Bay areas during 1952-1954 and has continued uninterrupted since 1955, sampling the entire range of the Atlantic menhaden purse-seine reduction fishery. Detailed descriptions of the sampling procedures and estimates gathered through the program are cited in Smith (1991).

The biological data, or port samples, for length- and weight-at-age are available from 1955 through 2016, and represents one of the longest and most complete time series of fishery data in the nation. The NMFS employs a full-time port agent at Reedville, VA to sample catches throughout the fishing season for age and size composition of the reduction catch (Table 14).

##### ***3.5.1.2 Bait Fishery***

###### **10 Fish Sampling**

Each state in the New England (ME, NH, MA, RI, CT) and Mid-Atlantic (NY, NJ, DE) regions are required to collect one 10-fish sample (age and length) per 300 metric tons landed for bait purposes. The TC recommends collecting the samples by gear type. One 10-fish sample consists of 10 fish collected from a distinct landing event (e.g., purse seine trip, pound net set). Each collection of 10 fish is from an independent sampling event; multiple 10-fish samples should not be collected from the same landing event.

Each state in the Chesapeake Bay (MD, PRFC, VA) and South Atlantic (NC, SC, GA, FL) regions are required to collect one 10-fish sample (age and length) per 200 metric tons landed for bait purposes. The TC recommends collecting the samples by gear type. One 10-fish sample consists of 10 fish collected from a distinct landing event (e.g., purse seine trip, pound net set). Each collection of 10 fish is an independent sampling event; multiple 10-fish samples should not be collected from the same landing event.

De minimis states are not required to conduct fishery-dependent biological sampling in the menhaden fishery (*Section 4.5.3: De Minimis Fishery Guidelines*).

Table 15 shows the number of 10-fish samples collected by the jurisdictions in 2016 as well as the number of age and length samples collected.

###### **Pound Net Monitoring**

Catch information from pound net fisheries is critical to determine changes in the relative abundance of adult menhaden along the east coast. At a minimum, each state with a pound net fishery must collect catch and effort data elements for Atlantic menhaden including total pounds (lbs) landed per day and number of pound nets fished per day. A pound net fishery includes floating fish traps and fishing weirs. These are harvester trip level ACCSP data

requirements. In order to characterize selectivity of this gear in each state, a goal of collecting five 10-fish samples annually is recommended. One 10-fish sample consists of 10 fish collected from a distinct landing event (e.g., pound net set). Each collection of 10 fish is an independent sampling event; multiple 10-fish samples should not be collected from the same landing event.

### ***3.5.2 Fishery-Independent Data Collection***

Assessment of the Atlantic menhaden stock requires information from a variety of fishery-independent surveys along the coast. As a part of the 2015 Benchmark Stock Assessment and the 2017 Stock Assessment Update, sixteen fishery-independent surveys were used to create a Juvenile Abundance Index, seven surveys were used to create a Northern Adult Index, and two surveys were used to create a Southern Adult Index. For many of the surveys used, the primary objective is to measure the abundance of species other than menhaden; however the bycatch of menhaden in these surveys can provide important information regarding stock conditions. Table 16 shows the surveys used to assess the status of Atlantic menhaden in the 2015 and 2017 stock assessments. State and federal agencies and academic institutions conducting these surveys are encouraged to continue them into the future to allow for the best possible assessment of Atlantic menhaden recruitment.

### ***3.5.3 Observer Programs***

As a condition of state and/or federal permitting, many vessels are required to carry at-sea observers when requested. A minimum set of standard data elements are to be collected through the ACCSP at-sea observer program (refer to the ACCSP Program Design document for details). Specific fisheries priorities will be determined by the Discard/Release Prioritization Committee of ACCSP.

## **3.6 ASSESSMENT OF STOCK CONDITION**

An Atlantic menhaden stock assessment will be performed every three years by the Stock Assessment Subcommittee (SASC). The TC and Advisory Panel (AP) will meet to review the stock assessment and all other relevant data sources. The stock assessment report shall follow the general outline as approved by the Interstate Fisheries Management Program Policy Board (ISFMP Policy Board) for all Commission-managed species. In addition to the general content of the report as specified in the outline, the stock assessment report may also address the specific topics detailed in the following sections. Specific topics in the stock assessment may change as the SASC continues to provide the best model and metrics possible to assess the Atlantic menhaden stock.

### ***3.6.1 Assessment of Population Age/Size Structure***

Estimates of Atlantic menhaden age and size structure are monitored based on results of the stock assessment. Improvements to data sources and modeling assumptions during the 2015 Benchmark Stock Assessment, such as increased sampling of the bait fishery, addition of several

surveys, and incorporation of dome shaped selectivity, greatly improved the understanding of size and age distribution of the menhaden stock.

### ***3.6.2 Assessment of Annual Recruitment***

Recruitment of Atlantic menhaden is currently estimated through two primary methods. The first is the estimate of recruitment to age-1 from the stock assessment model. The second is the examination of various fishery-independent data sources, including the juvenile abundance indices that are integrated in to the statistical modeling process.

### ***3.6.3 Assessment of Fecundity***

Population fecundity, a measure of total egg production by the population, is estimated from the stock assessment model every three years. Given egg production is not linearly related to female weight, indices of egg production may provide a better measures of reproductive output of a stock.

### ***3.6.4 Assessment of Fishing Mortality***

Fishing mortality (F) rates are estimated by the stock assessment model. Currently, fishing mortality rates are estimated for the reduction fishery, the bait fishery, and the recreational fishery.

## **3.7 STOCKING PROGRAM**

There is currently no stocking program in place for Atlantic menhaden.

## **4.0 MANAGEMENT PROGRAM**

### **4.1 RECREATIONAL FISHERY MANAGEMENT MEASURES**

No recreational fishery management measures are proposed in this amendment. Recreational landings of Atlantic menhaden are currently believed to be insignificant in terms of total harvest. Therefore, regulation of the recreational fishery is unnecessary at this time. The Board has the option of considering management changes to the recreational fishery through a future addendum, as detailed in Adaptive Management (*Section 4.6*).

### **4.2 FOR-HIRE FISHERIES MANAGEMENT MEASURES**

No management measures for the for-hire fisheries are proposed in this amendment. The Board has the option of considering management changes to the recreational fishery through a future addendum, as detailed in Adaptive Management (*Section 4.6*).

## **4.3 COMMERCIAL FISHERY MANAGEMENT MEASURES**

### ***4.3.1 Total Allowable Catch***

The Board will set an annual or multi-year TAC based on the following procedure.

The Atlantic Menhaden TC will annually review the best available data including, but not limited to, commercial and recreational catch/landing statistics, current estimates of fishing mortality, stock status, survey indices, assessment modeling results, and target mortality levels. The TC will calculate TAC options based on the Board selected method of setting a TAC (see *Section 4.3.1.1*). The Board will set an annual TAC through Board action, with the option of setting a multi-year TAC.

#### ***4.3.1.1 TAC Setting Method***

The Board will set the TAC based on the best available science (e.g., projection analysis); however, if the projections are not recommended for use by the TC, the Board will set a quota based on an ad-hoc approach. This could include the ad-hoc approach used by the Regional Fishery Management Councils (Berkson et al., 2011) or an ad-hoc approach that is informed by the Commission's ongoing development of a Risk and Uncertainty Policy.

##### Projection Analysis Used to Set a TAC (Preferred Method)

Projection analysis is conducted to explore a range of TAC alternatives and determine the percent risk of exceeding the  $F_{\text{target}}$  or the  $F_{\text{threshold}}$ . Monte Carlo Bootstrap runs of the base model run are used as the basis for the projection analysis. The Board can request specific TAC levels to be explored through the projection analysis or specify the probability level of the fishing mortality rate being between the  $F_{\text{target}}$  and  $F_{\text{threshold}}$ . Important assumptions of the projection analysis are that it does not include structural (model) uncertainty, fisheries are assumed to continue fishing at their estimated current proportions of total effort, and mortality is assumed to occur throughout the year.

##### Ad-hoc Approach to Setting a TAC

Should the TC not recommend the use of projection analysis to inform the specification process, an ad hoc approach used by several regional Fishery Management Councils can be adopted. This ad-hoc method is typically used for species with poor assessment data or uncertain stock assessment results. In these situations, Councils use landings/catch data as the only reliable means of setting harvest limits. A document entitled "Calculating Acceptable Biological Catch for Stocks that Have Reliable Catch Data Only (Only Reliable Catch Stocks – ORCS)" was recently published, and serves as guidance to set interim removal levels under these conditions (Berkson et al., 2011).

In summary, the ORCS approach estimates an overfishing limit (OFL) by first identifying an estimate of historic catch, called the 'catch statistic'. This is typically based off of the mean or median of landings over a specific number of years. The catch statistic is then multiplied by a scalar, which is identified based on the status of the stock and the risk of overexploitation. This

scalar can be greater than 1 for species which are not heavily exploited. The resulting value is a proxy for the OFL.

To account for the Council's risk tolerance when setting an Allowable Biological Catch, the resulting value is then multiplied by a precautionary scalar that ranges from 0 to 1. The appropriate multiplier is cautiously decided based on factors such as life history, ecological function, stock status, and an understanding of exploitation. A lower scalar represents a lower level of risk and a more conservative approach to the management of the species. In contrast, a higher scalar indicates a higher level of management risk, but may be appropriate if the stock has a low risk of overexploitation.

Should this process be adopted in the Atlantic menhaden fishery, the TC will recommend a catch statistic and a scalar that is based on the stock's risk of overexploitation. The Board will then decide on the second scalar which represents the Board's level of risk tolerance.

#### **4.3.1.2 Indecision Clause**

If the Board is unable to approve a TAC for the subsequent fishing year by December 31<sup>st</sup> of the current year, the TAC for the subsequent year will be set at the current year's TAC.

#### **4.3.2 Quota Allocation**

The Board must determine how to allocate the TAC among the different participants in the menhaden fishery. Once an allocation has been harvested, the directed fishery for that state, region, coast, disposition, or fleet closes. Menhaden harvest for specific gear types or states may be permitted after an allocation has been reached, depending on the management options selected in *Section 4.3.3: Quota Transfers*, *Section 4.3.5: Incidental Catch* and *Section 4.3.6: Episodic Events Set Aside Program*. Should quota not be allocated by jurisdiction, states will be required to submit trip-level reports to SAFIS for near real-time monitoring of the quota. See *Section 3.1.2 Bait Fishery Catch Reporting Process* for additional information. The Board has the authority to adjust the closure of a fishery relative to the percent of quota harvested through Board action.

To account for the various combinations of allocation methods and timeframes, the management alternatives have been divided into two tiers. The first tier outlines the allocation methods and the second tier outlines the allocation timeframes. Unless otherwise specified in the allocation method, an option must be chosen in each Tier to complete an allocation package. For example, to achieve the current allocation method specified in Amendment 2 (status quo), the Board would select: Tier 1, Option B: Jurisdictional; and Tier 2, Option A: 2009-2011.

The first tier presents six allocation options:

- Coastwide – no subdivision of the TAC
- Jurisdictional (status quo) – subdivision of the TAC by state
- Fixed Minimum – subdivision of the TAC by jurisdiction but each jurisdiction gets a baseline percentage
- Regional Fleet Capacity – subdivision of the TAC by gear type in distinct regions
- Dispositional – subdivision of the TAC between the reduction and bait/other fisheries
- Allocation Based on TAC level – the allocation method switches to one which is more favorable to the bait fishery when the TAC is above 212,500 mt

The second tier presents five timeframe options that are presented for calculating allocation percentages:

- 2009-2011 (status quo)
- 2012-2016
- 1985-2016
- 1985-1995
- Weighted (50% each to 1985-1995 and 2012-2016)

At their August 2017 meeting, the Menhaden Board approved a proposal by New York to recalibrate their historic menhaden landings due to inconsistent reporting prior to Amendment 2. In this proposal, New York compares average annual landings from 2009-2012 (a time period with inconsistent reporting) to average annual landings from 2013-2016 (a time period with greater reporting compliance). The difference between these two time periods (multiplier=2.9) is used to scale historic landings prior to 2013. The allocation percentages included in this document are based on recalibrated landings for New York. The New York proposal can be found in Appendix 2.

Allocation percentages for the various options can be found in Tables 2-6.

### **Tier 1: Allocation Methods**

Option A: Coastwide Allocation. Under this option the TAC is not subdivided by jurisdiction, fleet, or disposition. As a result, there is one coastwide TAC for the entire commercial fishery. A timeframe does not need to be chosen in Tier 2.

Option B: Jurisdictional Allocation. The coastwide commercial Atlantic menhaden TAC will be divided among the Atlantic coast jurisdictions based on the allocation timeframe chosen in Tier 2 (Table 2).

### Option C: Jurisdiction Allocation with Minimum Base Allocation.

Under this option, all jurisdictions are allocated a fixed minimum amount of quota, including jurisdictions which have not previously been allocated quota (Table 3). A timeframe must be chosen in Tier 2 to determine the allocation percentages.

Should a jurisdiction desire to forgo the fixed minimum quota it has been allocated, it may, on an annual basis, choose to decline its quota completely or maintain 10,000 pounds for bycatch purposes and decline the remainder of the quota. Quota which is relinquished by the states will be redistributed to the other jurisdiction(s). Should a state choose to relinquish its annual quota, the Commission must be notified through the annual compliance report process.

Sub-option 1: Each jurisdiction receives 0.5% of the coastwide TAC prior to the allocation being divided. For reference 0.5% of 200,000 mt equals approximately 2.2 million pounds and 8% of 200,000 mt (the sum of each jurisdictions 0.5%) equals 35.3 million pounds.

Sub-option 2: Each jurisdiction receives 1% of the coastwide TAC prior to the allocation being divided. For reference 1% of 200,000 mt equals approximately 4.4 million pounds and 16% of 200,000 mt (the sum of each jurisdictions 1%) equals 70.5 million pounds.

Sub-option 3: Each jurisdiction receives 2% of the coastwide TAC prior to the allocation being divided. For reference 2% of a 200,000 mt TAC equals approximately 8.8 million pounds and 32% of a 200,000 mt TAC (the sum of each jurisdictions 2%) equals 141.1 million pounds.

#### Option D: Regional Fleet-Capacity Quota

Menhaden commercial TAC is regionally divided between two fleets (Table 4). The intent of this option is to secure quota for various gear types in different regions along the coast. The fleets separate gear types into two categories, which are defined as:

- Large-Capacity Fleet: purse seines and pair-trawls.
- Small-Capacity Fleet: all other gears types including cast nets, traps, pots, haul seines, fyke nets, hook and line, trawls (excluding pair trawls), bag nets, hoop nets, hand lines, trammel nets, bait nets, pound nets, anchored/staked gill nets, drift gill nets, fishing weirs, and floating fish traps.

The three regions used to further allocate the quota provided to each fleet are defined as:

- New England: ME through CT
- Mid-Atlantic: NY through DE
- Chesapeake Bay/South Atlantic: MD through FL

Each fleet's regional fishery will be closed when 90% of the quota is reported to be caught (as indicated through SAFIS). This fishery closure does not apply to a fleet operating under a soft cap. If a fleet-capacity allocation method is chosen, a small-scale fishery set aside (Option E) in *Section 4.3.6 Incidental Catch and Small Scale Fisheries* does not apply.

Included in this allocation method is the option for a soft cap, which sets a target quota for a fleet but does not subject that fleet to a fishery closure. The rationale for the use of a soft cap is that it can relieve the administrative burden on states to implement timely quota reporting for small-scale gears which represent less than 6% of landings in the fishery. Furthermore, it can reduce discards in the fishery and minimize economic impacts on small-scale community fisheries. If a soft cap is chosen, states will continue to monitor landings by gear types in the



small-capacity fleet; however, landings by the small capacity fleet do not need to be reported to SAFIS. Landings by gears subject to a soft cap will be reported to the Board as a part of the annual FMP Review (*Section 5.3: Compliance Report*). Should a gear type subject to a soft cap show a continued and significant increase in its proportion of landings relative to total landings in the fishery, the Board has the authority, through Adaptive Management (*Section 4.6*), to reduce an existing trip limit or re-assign that gear type to another fleet.

Sub-option 1: All regional fleet quotas are hard caps and as a result, a regional fishery within a fleet closes when the quota is met.

Sub-option 2: The small-capacity fleet operates on a soft cap, in which the regional fisheries within the small-capacity-fleet do not close if the quota is met. All gears in the small-capacity fleet operate under a 25,000 pound trip limit per day throughout the fishing year. The purpose of this trip limit is to provide an input control on the small-scale fleet given the fishery does not close if the quota is met. The large-capacity fleet operates under a hard cap, such that a regional large-capacity fleet closes when 90% of the quota is reported to be caught. There is no trip limit for the large-capacity fleet. If this option is chosen, the management alternatives in *Section 4.3.6 Incidental Catch and Small Scale Fisheries* do not apply.

#### Option E: Disposition Quota

Menhaden commercial TAC is divided between the reduction and bait/other fisheries (Table 5a). For the purposes of this Amendment, reduction harvest is defined as menhaden which are landed for the purposes of reducing, through the process of hearting, separating, and drying, into fishmeal, fish oil, and associated products.

Sub-option 1: Seventy-five percent of the overall menhaden commercial TAC is allocated to the reduction fishery, and 25% of the overall TAC is allocated to the bait/other fishery. For reference, 25% of 200,000 metric tons (the 2017 TAC) is 50,000 mt or roughly 110 million pounds.

Sub-option 2: Seventy percent of the overall menhaden commercial TAC is allocated to the reduction fishery, and 30% of the overall TAC is allocated to the bait/other fishery. For reference, 30% of 200,000 metric tons (the 2017 TAC) is 60,000 mt or roughly 132 million pounds.

\*Under this allocation method, the bait quota can be further divided by jurisdiction, fleet, region, or through a fixed minimum approach [Tables 5(b) – 5(i)]. Should the bait quota be further divided by fleets, a soft cap can still be applied to the small-scale fleet. If the bait quota be further divided by any method, a timeframe must be selected in Tier 2. If the bait allocation is not further divided, a timeframe does not need to be selected in Tier 2.

Should the bait quota not be further divided into jurisdictional quotas, SAFIS will be used to monitor landings in season. Once 80% of the bait allocation is reached (as indicated through

SAFIS), a trip limit of 25,000 pounds will be implemented in the bait sector. The respective fisheries will close when 95% of the allocation has been reached (as indicated through SAFIS or CDFRs) in order to minimize overages. A fisherman cannot land menhaden more than once in a single calendar day. If the bait quota is further allocated by jurisdiction, the following do not apply: trip limits, a required fishery closure when 95% of the allocation has been reached, and reporting through SAFIS.

#### Option F: Allocation Based on TAC Level

The coastwide menhaden commercial TAC will be allocated using two different methods depending on the level at which the annual TAC is set. At or below the baseline annual TAC level of 212,500 mt, quotas will be allocated to jurisdictions based on average landings from 2009-2011 (i.e: the current allocation method, Table 2). If the annual TAC is set above the base level TAC, the difference between the annual TAC and 212,500 mt will be allocated using a strategy that is more favorable to the bait fishery. A sub-option below must be selected to determine the allocation method used when the TAC is greater than 212,500 mt. In addition, a timeframe must be selected in Tier 2.

Sub-option 1: If the annual TAC is greater than 212,500 mt, the difference between the annual TAC and 212,500 mt will be distributed such that the reduction fishery gets 50% of the allocation (included in Virginia's quota) and the other 50% is distributed to jurisdictions based on bait landings during a timeframe chosen in Tier 2 (Table 6a).

Sub-option 2: If the annual TAC is greater than 212,500 mt, the difference between the annual TAC and 212,500 mt will be distributed such that the reduction fishery gets 30% of the allocation (included in Virginia's quota) and the other 70% is distributed to jurisdictions based on bait landings during a timeframe chosen in Tier 2 (Table 6b).

#### **Tier 2: Allocation Timeframe**

##### Option A: 2009-2011 (status quo)

The quota allocation is based on the three-year average landings from 2009 to 2011.

##### Option B: 2012-2016 (5 years)

The quota allocation time frame is based on the five-year average landings from 2012 to 2016. This time frame includes the five most recent years of data and encompasses years prior to and after the implementation of a quota system. Landings include transfers, bycatch, and landings under the episodic events program.

##### Option C: 1985-2016 (31 years)

The quota allocation time frame is based on average landings from 1985 to 2016. This time frame includes the longest range of years available with adequate landings data, and as such should capture more variability in landings. Landings include transfers, bycatch, and landings under the episodic events program. Bait landings going back to 1985 include more uncertainty, primarily due to voluntary reporting of bait landings in some states. Reduction landings from a state which no longer has a reduction fishery are not included in the state's average landings.

Option D: 1985-1995 (11 years)

The quota allocation time frame is based on the eleven-year average landings from 1985 to 1995. Bait landings from 1985 to 1995 include more uncertainty, primarily due to voluntary reporting of bait landings in some states. Reduction landings from a state which no longer has a reduction fishery are not included in the state's average landings.

Option E: Weighted Allocation

The quota allocation time frame is based on a weighted average of total landings, using the 1985-1995 and 2012-2016 time frames. Each time frame is given a 50% weighting. This option takes into account a more historical time period and the most recent time period. All potential data concerns for the 1985 -1995 time period mentioned in Option D would still apply. Reduction landings from a state which no longer has a reduction fishery are not included in the state's average landings.

**Table 2: Jurisdictional Allocation**

Percent of menhaden commercial TAC allocated to each jurisdiction (Tier 1, Option B).

	<b>2009-2011 TAC %</b>	<b>2012-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-1995 TAC %</b>	<b>Weighted</b>
<b>ME</b>	0.02%	0.22%	0.06%	0.02%	0.10%
<b>NH</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.01%	0.00%
<b>MA</b>	0.84%	0.59%	0.60%	0.70%	0.66%
<b>RI</b>	0.02%	0.15%	0.65%	1.46%	0.95%
<b>CT</b>	0.02%	0.01%	0.03%	0.02%	0.02%
<b>NY</b>	0.21%	0.27%	0.30%	0.33%	0.31%
<b>NJ</b>	11.27%	12.62%	5.76%	2.37%	6.36%
<b>PA</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
<b>DE</b>	0.01%	0.03%	0.02%	0.02%	0.02%
<b>MD</b>	1.51%	1.99%	1.08%	0.63%	1.16%
<b>PRFC</b>	0.62%	0.85%	1.10%	1.39%	1.18%
<b>VA</b>	84.96%	83.05%	89.80%	92.21%	88.64%
<b>NC</b>	0.50%	0.16%	0.47%	0.60%	0.43%
<b>SC</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
<b>GA</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
<b>FL</b>	0.02%	0.06%	0.13%	0.25%	0.17%

**Table 3: Fixed Minimum Allocation**

Percent of menhaden commercial TAC allocated to each jurisdiction based on a fixed minimum approach (Tier 1, Option C). Table (a) provides each state with a 0.5% fixed minimum quota. Table (b) provides each state with a 1% fixed minimum quota. Table (c) provides each state with a 2% fixed minimum quota.

**Table 3(a): 0.5% fixed minimum quota**

	<b>2009-2011 TAC %</b>	<b>2012-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-1995 TAC %</b>	<b>Weighted</b>
<b>ME</b>	0.52%	0.70%	0.56%	0.52%	0.59%
<b>NH</b>	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.51%	0.50%
<b>MA</b>	1.27%	1.04%	1.05%	1.14%	1.10%
<b>RI</b>	0.52%	0.64%	1.10%	1.84%	1.37%
<b>CT</b>	0.52%	0.51%	0.53%	0.52%	0.52%
<b>NY</b>	0.69%	0.75%	0.78%	0.80%	0.78%
<b>NJ</b>	10.87%	12.11%	5.80%	2.68%	6.35%
<b>PA</b>	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%
<b>DE</b>	0.51%	0.53%	0.52%	0.52%	0.52%
<b>MD</b>	1.89%	2.33%	1.49%	1.08%	1.57%
<b>PRFC</b>	1.07%	1.28%	1.51%	1.78%	1.59%
<b>VA</b>	78.66%	76.91%	83.12%	85.33%	82.05%
<b>NC</b>	0.96%	0.64%	0.93%	1.05%	0.89%
<b>SC</b>	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%
<b>GA</b>	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%
<b>FL</b>	0.52%	0.55%	0.62%	0.73%	0.66%

Table 3(b): 1% fixed minimum quota

	2009-2011 TAC %	2012-2016 TAC %	1985-2016 TAC %	1985-1995 TAC %	Weighted
ME	1.02%	1.19%	1.05%	1.02%	1.08%
NH	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.01%	1.00%
MA	1.71%	1.50%	1.50%	1.59%	1.55%
RI	1.02%	1.13%	1.54%	2.22%	1.80%
CT	1.01%	1.01%	1.03%	1.02%	1.02%
NY	1.17%	1.23%	1.25%	1.27%	1.26%
NJ	10.47%	11.60%	5.84%	2.99%	6.34%
PA	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%
DE	1.01%	1.03%	1.02%	1.02%	1.02%
MD	2.27%	2.67%	1.91%	1.53%	1.98%
PRFC	1.52%	1.72%	1.92%	2.17%	1.99%
VA	72.37%	70.76%	76.43%	78.46%	75.46%
NC	1.42%	1.13%	1.39%	1.50%	1.36%
SC	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%
GA	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%
FL	1.02%	1.05%	1.11%	1.21%	1.15%

Table 3(c): 2% fixed minimum quota

	2009-2011 TAC %	2012-2016 TAC %	1985-2016 TAC %	1985-1995 TAC %	Weighted
ME	2.01%	2.15%	2.04%	2.02%	2.07%
NH	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%
MA	2.57%	2.40%	2.41%	2.47%	2.45%
RI	2.01%	2.10%	2.44%	2.99%	2.64%
CT	2.01%	2.01%	2.02%	2.02%	2.01%
NY	2.14%	2.19%	2.20%	2.22%	2.21%
NJ	9.67%	10.58%	5.92%	3.61%	6.33%
PA	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%
DE	2.01%	2.02%	2.01%	2.01%	2.02%
MD	3.03%	3.35%	2.73%	2.43%	2.79%
PRFC	2.42%	2.58%	2.75%	2.95%	2.80%
VA	59.77%	58.47%	63.06%	64.70%	62.28%
NC	2.34%	2.11%	2.32%	2.41%	2.29%
SC	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%
GA	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%
FL	2.01%	2.04%	2.09%	2.17%	2.12%

**Table 4: Regional Fleet Capacity Quota**

Percent of menhaden commercial TAC regionally allocated to the small and large capacity fleets (Tier 1, Option D). Given Florida did not code landings by gear type prior to 1993, the percent of landings by gear type in 1993 and 1994 were used to estimate gear landings from 1988-1992. The breakdown of allocation percentages for the large fleet by region cannot be shown due to confidentiality rules.

Confidentiality Policy:

Large Fleet					
	2009-2011 TAC %	2012-2016 TAC %	1985-2016 TAC %	1985-1995 TAC %	Weighted
ME, NH, MA, RI, CT	96.08%	94.16%	1.22%	95.32%	94.87%
NY, NJ, PA, DE			5.48%		
MD, PRFC, VA, NC, SC, GA, FL			88.96%		
Small Fleet					
	2009-2011 TAC %	2012-2016 TAC %	1985-2016 TAC %	1985-1995 TAC %	Weighted
ME, NH, MA, RI, CT	0.05%	0.08%	0.08%	0.10%	0.09%
NY, NJ, PA, DE	0.34%	1.17%	0.60%	0.58%	0.81%
MD, PRFC, VA, NC, SC, GA, FL	3.53%	4.59%	3.66%	4.00%	4.23%

**Table 5: Disposition Allocation**

Percent of menhaden commercial TAC allocated to the reduction and bait/other fisheries. Table (a) shows the division of the bait/other and reduction fisheries based on sub-options 1 and 2. Table (b) shows further division of the bait/other quota by jurisdiction. Table (c) shows further division of the bait/other quota by jurisdiction with a 0.5% fixed minimum. Table (d) shows further division of the bait/other quota by jurisdiction with a 1% fixed minimum. Table (e) shows further division of the bait/other quota by jurisdiction with a 2% fixed minimum. Table (f) shows further division of the bait/other quota by fleet capacity. Table (g) shows further division of the bait/other quota by three regions. Table (h) shows further division of the bait/other quota by four regions. Table (i) shows further division of the bait/other quota by fleet and region.

**Table 5(a): Bait/other vs. reduction quotas**

	Bait/Other	Reduction
Sub-Option 1	25%	75%
Sub-Option 2	30%	70%

**Table 5(b): Bait/other quota further distributed by jurisdiction. It is important to note that these percentages further divide the TAC already allocated to the bait/other sector in Table 5(a). This means the percentages in this table further divide either 25% or 30% of the TAC, depending on what is chosen in Table 5(a).**

	<b>2009-2011 TAC %</b>	<b>2012-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-1995 TAC %</b>	<b>Weighted</b>
<b>ME</b>	0.09%	0.89%	0.43%	0.22%	0.63%
<b>NH</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.02%	0.07%	0.03%
<b>MA</b>	3.96%	2.38%	3.94%	6.93%	4.15%
<b>RI</b>	0.09%	0.60%	4.27%	14.46%	5.99%
<b>CT</b>	0.08%	0.05%	0.20%	0.24%	0.12%
<b>NY</b>	0.97%	1.11%	1.98%	3.23%	1.93%
<b>NJ</b>	52.98%	50.78%	37.90%	23.58%	40.22%
<b>PA</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
<b>DE</b>	0.06%	0.13%	0.13%	0.19%	0.15%
<b>MD</b>	7.09%	8.00%	7.11%	6.30%	7.34%
<b>PRFC</b>	2.93%	3.43%	7.23%	13.82%	7.47%
<b>VA</b>	29.33%	31.76%	32.90%	22.56%	28.19%
<b>NC</b>	2.33%	0.63%	3.06%	5.94%	2.69%
<b>SC</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
<b>GA</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
<b>FL</b>	0.09%	0.24%	0.84%	2.44%	1.09%



**Table 5(c): Bait/other quota further distributed by jurisdiction, with a 0.5% fixed minimum. It is important to note that these percentages further divide the TAC already allocated to the bait/other sector in Table 5(a). This means the percentages in this table further divide either 25% or 30% of the TAC, depending on what is chosen in Table 5(a).**

	<b>2009-2011 TAC %</b>	<b>2012-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-1995 TAC %</b>	<b>Weighted</b>
<b>ME</b>	0.58%	1.32%	0.89%	0.71%	1.08%
<b>NH</b>	0.50%	0.50%	0.52%	0.57%	0.53%
<b>MA</b>	4.14%	2.69%	4.12%	6.88%	4.32%
<b>RI</b>	0.58%	1.05%	4.42%	13.81%	6.01%
<b>CT</b>	0.57%	0.55%	0.69%	0.72%	0.61%
<b>NY</b>	1.40%	1.52%	2.32%	3.47%	2.28%
<b>NJ</b>	49.24%	47.22%	35.37%	22.19%	37.50%
<b>PA</b>	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%
<b>DE</b>	0.56%	0.62%	0.62%	0.68%	0.64%
<b>MD</b>	7.02%	7.86%	7.04%	6.30%	7.25%
<b>PRFC</b>	3.19%	3.66%	7.15%	13.21%	7.37%
<b>VA</b>	27.48%	29.72%	30.77%	21.26%	26.44%
<b>NC</b>	2.64%	1.08%	3.32%	5.97%	2.98%
<b>SC</b>	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%
<b>GA</b>	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%	0.50%
<b>FL</b>	0.59%	0.72%	1.27%	2.74%	1.50%

**Table 5(d): Bait/other quota further distributed by jurisdiction, with a 1% fixed minimum. It is important to note that these percentages further divide the TAC already allocated to the bait/other sector in Table 5(a). This means the percentages in this table further divide either 25% or 30% of the TAC, depending on what is chosen in Table 5(a).**

	<b>2009-2011 TAC %</b>	<b>2012-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-1995 TAC %</b>	<b>Weighted</b>
<b>ME</b>	1.07%	1.75%	1.36%	1.19%	1.53%
<b>NH</b>	1.00%	1.00%	1.02%	1.06%	1.02%
<b>MA</b>	4.32%	3.00%	4.31%	6.82%	4.48%
<b>RI</b>	1.08%	1.51%	4.58%	13.15%	6.03%
<b>CT</b>	1.07%	1.04%	1.17%	1.20%	1.10%
<b>NY</b>	1.82%	1.93%	2.66%	3.72%	2.62%
<b>NJ</b>	45.50%	43.66%	32.84%	20.81%	34.78%
<b>PA</b>	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%
<b>DE</b>	1.05%	1.11%	1.11%	1.16%	1.13%
<b>MD</b>	6.96%	7.72%	6.97%	6.30%	7.17%
<b>PRFC</b>	3.46%	3.88%	7.07%	12.61%	7.27%
<b>VA</b>	25.63%	27.68%	28.64%	19.95%	24.68%
<b>NC</b>	2.96%	1.53%	3.57%	5.99%	3.26%
<b>SC</b>	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%
<b>GA</b>	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%	1.00%
<b>FL</b>	1.08%	1.20%	1.70%	3.05%	1.92%

**Table 5(e): Bait/other quota further distributed by jurisdiction, with a 2% fixed minimum. It is important to note that these percentages further divide the TAC already allocated to the bait/other sector in Table 5(a). This means the percentages in this table further divide either 25% or 30% of the TAC, depending on what is chosen in Table 5(a).**

	<b>2009-2011 TAC %</b>	<b>2012-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-1995 TAC %</b>	<b>Weighted</b>
<b>ME</b>	2.06%	2.61%	2.29%	2.15%	2.43%
<b>NH</b>	2.00%	2.00%	2.01%	2.05%	2.02%
<b>MA</b>	4.69%	3.62%	4.68%	6.71%	4.82%
<b>RI</b>	2.06%	2.41%	4.90%	11.84%	6.07%
<b>CT</b>	2.05%	2.03%	2.14%	2.16%	2.08%
<b>NY</b>	2.66%	2.75%	3.34%	4.20%	3.31%
<b>NJ</b>	38.03%	36.53%	27.77%	18.03%	29.35%
<b>PA</b>	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%
<b>DE</b>	2.04%	2.09%	2.09%	2.13%	2.10%
<b>MD</b>	6.82%	7.44%	6.83%	6.29%	6.99%
<b>PRFC</b>	3.99%	4.34%	6.91%	11.39%	7.08%
<b>VA</b>	21.94%	23.60%	24.37%	17.34%	21.17%
<b>NC</b>	3.58%	2.43%	4.08%	6.04%	3.83%
<b>SC</b>	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%
<b>GA</b>	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%
<b>FL</b>	2.06%	2.16%	2.57%	3.66%	2.74%

**Table 5(f): Bait/other quota further distributed by fleet capacity. It is important to note that these percentages further divide the TAC already allocated to the bait/other sector in Table 5(a). This means the percentages in this table further divide either 25% or 30% of the TAC, depending on what is chosen in Table 5(a).**

	<b>2009- 2011</b>	<b>2012- 2016</b>	<b>1985- 2016</b>	<b>1985- 1995</b>	<b>Weighted</b>
<b>Large Capacity Bait Quota</b>	81.6%	76.5%	71.4%	53.1%	67.5%
<b>Small Capacity Bait Quota</b>	18.4%	23.5%	28.6%	46.9%	32.5%

Table 5(g): Bait/other quota further distributed by three regions. It is important to note that these percentages further divide the TAC already allocated to the bait/other sector in Table 5(a). This means the percentages in this table further divide either 25% or 30% of the TAC, depending on what is chosen in Table 5(a).

	2009-2011 TAC %	2012-2016 TAC %	1985-2016 TAC %	1985-1995 TAC %	Weighted
ME, NH, MA, RI, CT	4.21%	3.92%	8.85%	21.93%	10.91%
NY, NJ, PA, DE	54.02%	52.02%	40.01%	27.00%	42.30%
MD, PRFC, VA, NC, SC, GA, FL	41.77%	44.06%	51.14%	51.07%	46.78%

Table 5(h): Bait/other quota further distributed by four regions. It is important to note that these percentages further divide the TAC already allocated to the bait/other sector in Table 5(a). This means the percentages in this table further divide either 25% or 30% of the TAC, depending on what is chosen in Table 5(a).

	2009-2011 TAC %	2012-2016 TAC %	1985-2016 TAC %	1985-1995 TAC %	Weighted
ME, NH, MA, RI, CT	4.21%	3.92%	8.85%	21.93%	10.91%
NY, NJ, PA, DE	54.02%	52.02%	40.01%	27.00%	42.30%
MD, PRFC, VA	39.34%	43.20%	47.24%	42.68%	43.00%
NC, SC, GA, FL	2.42%	0.86%	3.90%	8.38%	3.78%

Table 5(i): Bait/other quota further distributed by regional fleets. It is important to note that these percentages further divide the TAC already allocated to the bait/other sector in Table 5(a). This means the percentages in this table further divide either 25% or 30% of the TAC, depending on what is chosen in Table 5(a). The breakdown of allocation percentages for the large fleet by region cannot be shown due to confidentiality rules.

No fleet by region cannot be shown due to confidentiality rules.

Large Fleet Bait					
	2009-2011 TAC %	2012-2016 TAC %	1985-2016 TAC %	1985-1995 TAC %	Weighted
ME, NH, MA, RI, CT	81.60%	76.50%	8.07%	53.10%	67.50%
NY, NJ, PA, DE			36.14%		
MD, PRFC, VA, NC, SC, GA, FL			27.19%		
Small Fleet Bait					
	2009-2011 TAC %	2012-2016 TAC %	1985-2016 TAC %	1985-1995 TAC %	Weighted
ME, NH, MA, RI, CT	0.24%	0.33%	0.51%	0.95%	0.57%
NY, NJ, PA, DE	1.59%	4.70%	3.98%	5.82%	5.13%
MD, PRFC, VA, NC, SC, GA, FL	16.56%	18.47%	24.11%	40.12%	26.80%

**Table 6: Allocation Based on TAC Level**

Percent of menhaden commercial TAC greater than 212,500 mt that is allocated to each jurisdiction (Tier 1, Option F). These allocation percentages only apply if the annual TAC is greater than 212,500 mt. If the TAC is less than or equal to 212,500 mt, allocations are based on jurisdictional landings from 2009-2011 (Table 2). Table (a) shows sub-option 1 in which the Virginia reduction fishery is allocated 50% of the difference between the annual TAC and 212,500 mt (included in Virginia's percentage below) and the states bait fisheries are allocated the other 50%. Table (b) shows sub-option 2 in which the Virginia reduction fishery is allocated 30% of the difference between the annual TAC and 212,500 mt (included in Virginia's percentage below) and the states bait fisheries are allocated the other 70%.

**Table 6(a): Allocation based on TAC level Sub-Option 1**

	<b>2009-2011 TAC %</b>	<b>2012-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-2016 TAC %</b>	<b>1985-1995 TAC %</b>	<b>Weighted TAC %</b>
<b>ME</b>	0.04%	0.45%	0.21%	0.11%	0.32%
<b>NH</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.01%	0.04%	0.01%
<b>MA</b>	1.98%	1.19%	1.97%	3.47%	2.07%
<b>RI</b>	0.05%	0.30%	2.13%	7.23%	2.99%
<b>CT</b>	0.04%	0.02%	0.10%	0.12%	0.06%
<b>NY</b>	0.49%	0.55%	0.99%	1.62%	0.97%
<b>NJ</b>	26.49%	25.39%	18.95%	11.79%	20.11%
<b>PA</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
<b>DE</b>	0.03%	0.06%	0.06%	0.10%	0.08%
<b>MD</b>	3.55%	4.00%	3.55%	3.15%	3.67%
<b>PRFC</b>	1.46%	1.72%	3.61%	6.91%	3.73%
<b>VA</b>	64.66%	65.88%	66.45%	61.28%	64.10%
<b>NC</b>	1.16%	0.31%	1.53%	2.97%	1.35%
<b>SC</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
<b>GA</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
<b>FL</b>	0.05%	0.12%	0.42%	1.22%	0.55%

**Table 6(b): Allocation based on TAC level Sub-Option 2**

	<b>2009-2011 % TAC</b>	<b>2012-2016 % TAC</b>	<b>1985-2016 % TAC</b>	<b>1985-1995 % TAC</b>	<b>Weighted % TAC</b>
<b>ME</b>	0.06%	0.62%	0.30%	0.16%	0.44%
<b>NH</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.01%	0.05%	0.02%
<b>MA</b>	2.77%	1.66%	2.76%	4.85%	2.90%
<b>RI</b>	0.06%	0.42%	2.99%	10.12%	4.19%
<b>CT</b>	0.06%	0.03%	0.14%	0.17%	0.09%
<b>NY</b>	0.68%	0.77%	1.38%	2.26%	1.35%
<b>NJ</b>	37.09%	35.55%	26.53%	16.51%	28.15%
<b>PA</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
<b>DE</b>	0.04%	0.09%	0.09%	0.13%	0.11%
<b>MD</b>	4.96%	5.60%	4.98%	4.41%	5.14%
<b>PRFC</b>	2.05%	2.40%	5.06%	9.67%	5.23%
<b>VA</b>	50.53%	52.24%	53.03%	45.79%	49.73%
<b>NC</b>	1.63%	0.44%	2.14%	4.16%	1.88%
<b>SC</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
<b>GA</b>	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
<b>FL</b>	0.06%	0.17%	0.59%	1.70%	0.76%

#### **4.3.2.1 Overage Payback**

Any overage of a quota allocation is subtracted for that specific quota allocation in the subsequent year on a pound for pound basis. The exception to this rule is if a soft cap is implemented for a small-capacity fleet or if overage reconciliation (Options C) is adopted under *Section 4.3.3: Quota Transfers*. Overage determination is based on final allocations, including transfers if applicable. Overages will be subtracted from the subsequent year's quota following submission of state compliance reports. Should overages change as preliminary data is finalized, quotas will be re-adjusted accordingly.

#### **4.3.2.2 Allocation Revisit Provision**

Quota allocations will be revisited every three years following implementation of Amendment 3, or can be revisited at any time through the adaptive management process (*Section 4.6*).

#### **4.3.3 Quota Transfers**

The option to transfer quota only applies if the Board selects regional or state-based quotas, including state-specific quotas with a fixed minimum, an allocation strategy based on the TAC level, bait/other allocation further divided by state or region, and regional fleet-capacity quotas. If a regional or state-based allocation option is not selected, no quota transfers are permitted. In addition, transfers are not permitted for quotas that operate under a soft cap.

All transfers require a donor region or state (giving the quota) and a receiving region or state (receiving the quota). Transfers cannot be greater than the amount of quota allocated to the donor region or state for that fishing year. In order to initiate a transfer, a member of each state agency involved must submit a signed letter to the Commission identifying the involved parties, the pounds of quota to be transferred, and justification for the transfer (i.e.: an expected quota overage, safe harbor landings, etc). Letters regarding regional quotas must indicate that all states in the region agree to the transfer and may be signed by multiple state agencies. The Executive Director, the ISFMP Director, and/or the FMP Coordinator will review all transfer requests. The transfer becomes final upon receipt of signed letters from the Commission to the donor and receiving parties. In the event that the donor or receiving member of a transaction subsequently wishes to change the amount of the transfer, both parties have to agree to the change and submit letters to the Commission which are signed by a member of the state agency. Parties participating in a quota transfer may add a provision which states that if the donor state or region incurs an overage in the current fishing year due to the transfer, the overage will be accommodated and paid back by the receiving state in the subsequent year.

If a region or state receives multiple requests to transfer quota at the same time, it is recommended that the state or region considers the requests in the order in which they were received. Transfer requests intended to resolve issues other than quota overages (i.e. safe harbor) may need to be addressed ahead of the order in which they were received.

Transfers do not permanently affect the region or state-specific shares of the coastwide quota, i.e., the region or state-specific shares remain fixed. Regions or states have the responsibility to close the Atlantic menhaden commercial fishery in their jurisdiction once the quota (or a percentage thereof) is reached. Once quota has been transferred, the region or state receiving quota becomes responsible for any overages of their new quota (the receiving region or state's original quota plus any quota transferred). Overages will be deducted from the corresponding region or state's quota the following fishing season.

Option A: Quota Transfers Permitted

Two or more regions or states, under mutual agreement, may transfer or combine their Atlantic menhaden quota.

Option B: Quota Transfers Permitted with Accountability Measures for Overages

Two or more regions or states, under mutual agreement, may transfer or combine their Atlantic menhaden quota. If a state or region exceeds its quota allocation (comprised of the allocation distributed at the beginning of year plus the distribution of unused episodic set aside, if applicable) by more than 5% each year for two years in a row, it may not receive a quota transfer in the third year.

Option C: Quota Reconciliation

In a year where coastwide landings do not exceed the TAC but some states or regions exceed their allocation, state or region quota overages are automatically forgiven in their entirety. As a result, overages are not deducted from subsequent year's quota. The intent of this option is to streamline the quota transfer process as quota transfers are not needed to address quota overages. Quota transfers can still be made between two or more regions or states, under mutual agreement, to address concerns unrelated to quota overages.

If coastwide landings do exceed the TAC and state(s) or region(s) have a quota overage, regions or states which do not have a quota overage automatically have their unused quota transferred to a "common pool". This "common pool" quota is then equally re-distributed to states or regions with overages based on the number of parties with an overage (Table 7). If a state or region still has a quota overage remaining after the redistribution of the "common pool" quota, this remaining overage is deducted from a region or state's quota the subsequent year. Quota transfers cannot be made to address remaining quota overages after quota reconciliation.

Quota reconciliation will occur following the submission of state compliance reports. Quota rollovers are not permitted under quota reconciliation (*Section 4.3.4*).



**Table 7:** Process for re-distribution of “common pool” quota when the coastwide TAC is exceeded (Option C). The redistribution process can be repeated until all of the unused quota is distributed. For this example, the amount of available common pool quota is 100,000 lbs. Two rounds of common pool allocation are needed to distribute the full 100,000 lbs.

	<b>Available Common Pool Quota Round 1: 100,000</b>		
	<b>Overage (lbs)</b>	<b>Quota Allocated from Common Pool (lbs)</b>	<b>Remaining Overage</b>
<b>Region/State 1</b>	100,000	33,333	66,667
<b>Region/State 2</b>	50,000	33,333	16,667
<b>Region/State 3</b>	10,000	33,333 (accept 10,000)	0

	<b>Available Common Pool Quota Round 2: 23,333</b>		
	<b>Overage (lbs)</b>	<b>Quota Allocated from Common Pool (lbs)</b>	<b>Remaining Overage</b>
<b>Region/State 1</b>	66,667	11,667	55,000
<b>Region/State 2</b>	16,667	11,667	5,000

#### **4.3.4 Quota Rollovers**

The option for quota rollovers only applies if the stock is not overfished and overfishing is not occurring. Should the stock be overfished but overfishing is not occurring, or vice versa, quota rollovers are not permitted.

Any quota that is rolled over must be used in the subsequent fishing year. If the rolled over quota is not used, it cannot be carried into a second fishing year. Quota rollovers are applicable to all allocation methods described in *Section 4.3.2*. If a coastwide allocation is adopted, unused quota is rolled over into the subsequent year’s TAC. If a jurisdictional allocation is adopted, unused quota from a specific state is rolled over to that state. If a disposition allocation is adopted and there is no further allocation by state, region, or fleet, unused quota from a specific sector (bait/other vs. reduction) is rolled over to that sector. If the bait/other quota is further divided by state, fleet and/or region, unused quota from a specific state/fleet/region/regional fleet is rolled over to that state/fleet/region/regional fleet. If a regional fleet capacity allocation is adopted, unused quota from a regional fleet is rolled over to that specific regional fleet. Quota rollovers are not permitted if quota reconciliation is implemented (*Section 4.3.3 Option C*). Therefore, if a reconciliation option is selected, Option A in this section is selected by default. Quota underages from a transfer cannot be rolled over into the subsequent year. In addition, unused quota allocated to set aside programs, such as the small-scale fishery set aside, the incidental catch fishery set aside, or the episodic events set aside, cannot be rolled over into the subsequent year.

As part of the Annual Compliance Report, jurisdictions must submit annual landings no later than April 1<sup>st</sup> of each year. Importantly, landings reported on April 1<sup>st</sup> are often preliminary and subject to change as data becomes finalized. As a result, landings from the previous year will be considered final on July 1<sup>st</sup> of the subsequent year and unused quota from the previous year

will be rolled over on July 1<sup>st</sup>. This will minimize changes to the amount of quota rolled over and reduce the administrative burden of this program. ASMFC staff will alert jurisdictions each year on July 1<sup>st</sup> as to the amount of quota rolled over. Should a change to a state's landings be made after July 1<sup>st</sup>, it will be addressed in the subsequent fishing year.

Option A: Unused Quota May Not Be Rolled Over

Unused quota may not be rolled over from one fishing year to the next.

Option B: 10% Total Quota Rollover

Up to 10% of a quota allocation may be carried over into the subsequent fishing year only. For example, if a quota allocation is 1 million pounds, up to 100,000 pounds of unused quota may be rolled over into the subsequent fishing year. Unused quota received as part of a transfer may not be rolled over.

Option C: 5% Total Quota Rollover

Up to 5% of a quota allocation may be carried over into the subsequent fishing year only. For example, if a quota allocation is 1 million pounds, up to 50,000 pounds of unused quota may be rolled over into the subsequent fishing year. Unused quota received as part of a transfer may not be rolled over.

Option D: 50% Unused Quota Rollover

Up to 50% of the unused portion of a quota allocation may be rolled over into the subsequent fishing year only. For example, if a quota allocation is 1 million pounds and 600,000 pounds were harvested, up to 200,000 pounds of unused quota could be rolled over into the subsequent year. Unused quota received as part of a transfer may not be rolled over.

***4.3.5 Incidental Catch and Small Scale Fisheries***

The Board may establish provisions for small-scale gears and non-directed gears to allow for moderate harvest following the closure of the directed fishery, or may set aside a portion of the TAC for harvest throughout the fishing year. Tables 17 and 18 show landings under the current bycatch provision from 2013-2016. For the purposes of this Amendment, **small-scale gears** include cast nets, traps (excluding floating fish traps), pots, haul seines, fyke nets, hook and line, bag nets, hoop nets, hand lines, trammel nets, and bait nets. **Non-directed gears** include pound nets, anchored/stake gillnets, drift gill net, trawls, fishing weirs, fyke nets, and floating fish traps. **Stationary multi-species gears** are defined as pound nets, anchored/stake gill nets, fishing weirs, floating fish traps, and fyke nets.

Landings under the incidental catch provision will be reported to the Board as a part of the annual FMP Review (*Section 5.3: Compliance Report*). Should a specific gear type show a continued and significant increase in landings under the incidental catch provision, or it becomes clear that a non-directed gear type is directing on menhaden under the incidental catch provision, the Board has the authority, through Adaptive Management (*Section 4.6*), to alter the trip limit or remove that gear from the incidental catch provision.

Please note: if a fleet-based allocation method is chosen in *Section 4.3.2 Quota Allocation*, Option E: Small-Scale Fishery Set Aside does not apply. If a soft cap is implemented for the small-capacity fleet in *Section 4.3.2 Quota Allocation*, the management alternatives in this section do not apply.

Option A: Catch Limit for Non-Directed Gear Types

After a quota allocation is met for a given jurisdiction, region, disposition, or fleet, the fishery moves to an incidental catch fishery in which **non-directed gear types** may land up to 6,000 pounds of menhaden per trip per day. Two permitted individuals, working from the same vessel fishing stationary multi-species gear, are authorized to work together and land up to 12,000 pounds from a single vessel – limited to one vessel trip per day. A trip is based on a calendar day such that no vessel may land menhaden more than once in a single calendar day. The use of multiple carrier vessels per trip to offload any bycatch exceeding 6,000 pounds of Atlantic menhaden is prohibited. Incidental catch landings are reported by states to the Commission as a part of Annual Compliance Reports. Under this option, landings in the incidental catch fishery do not count towards the TAC.

Option B: Catch Limit for Small Scale Fisheries and Non-Directed Gear Types

After a quota allocation is met for a given jurisdiction, region, disposition, or fleet, the fishery moves to an incidental catch fishery in which **small-scale gears** and **non-directed gear types** may land up to 6,000 pounds of menhaden per trip per day. Two authorized individuals, working from the same vessel fishing stationary multi-species gear, are permitted to work together and land up to 12,000 pounds from a single vessel – limited to one vessel trip per day. A trip is based on a calendar day such that no vessel may land menhaden more than once in a single calendar day. The use of multiple carrier vessels per trip to offload any bycatch exceeding 6,000 pounds of Atlantic menhaden is prohibited. Incidental catch landings are reported by states to the Commission as a part of Annual Compliance Reports. Under this option, landings in the incidental catch fishery do not count towards the TAC.

Option C: Catch Cap and Trigger

After a quota allocation is met for a given jurisdiction, region, disposition, or fleet, the fishery moves to an incidental catch fishery in which **small-scale gears** and **non-directed gear types** may land up to 6,000 pounds of menhaden per trip per day. Two authorized individuals, working from the same vessel fishing stationary multi-species gear, are permitted to work together and land up to 12,000 pounds from a single vessel – limited to one vessel trip per day. A trip is based on a calendar day such that no vessel may land menhaden more than once in a single calendar day. The use of multiple carrier vessels per trip to offload any bycatch exceeding 6,000 pounds of Atlantic menhaden is prohibited.

A catch cap for the incidental catch fishery is set at 2% of the TAC. For 2017, this represents approximately 8.8 million pounds, which is 2.2 million pounds higher than the maximum bycatch landing of 6.6 million pounds in a single year between 2013 and 2016. Incidental catch landings are reported by states to the Commission as a part of Annual Compliance Reports. If

reported incidental catch exceeds the Cap by more than 10% in a single year or exceeds the Cap two years in a row, regardless of the percent overage, management action is triggered by the Board to reduce incidental landings in the fishery. Under this option, landings in the incidental catch fishery do not count towards the TAC as the Cap is a threshold against which incidental catch landings are measured; the Cap is not a set aside.

Option D: Incidental Catch Fishery Set Aside

2% of the overall TAC is set aside for an incidental catch fishery, which occurs after a quota allocation is met for a given jurisdiction, region, disposition, or fleet. Under an incidental catch fishery, there is a 6,000 pound per trip per day menhaden allowance for **small-scale gears and non-directed gear types**. All landings by these gear types which occur after a quota allocation has been met are counted towards the set aside. Two authorized individuals, working from the same vessel fishing stationary multi-species gear, are permitted to work together and land up to 12,000 pounds from a single vessel – limited to one vessel trip per day. A trip is based on a calendar day such that no vessel may land menhaden more than once in a single calendar day. The use of multiple carrier vessels per trip to offload any bycatch exceeding 6,000 pounds of Atlantic menhaden is prohibited.

Landings made by small-scale fisheries and non-directed fisheries following the closure of the directed fishery are reported by states to the Commission as a part of Annual Compliance Reports. If the set aside is exceeded in a given year, the overage is deducted from the subsequent year's set aside. Should quota reconciliation be chosen in *Section 4.3.3*, overages of the incidental catch fishery set aside will be forgiven if the coastwide TAC is not exceeded; however, if the coastwide TAC is exceeded, "common pool" quota will not be distributed to the incidental catch fishery set aside and the overage will be paid back in full the following year. Unused quota from a region or state can be transferred to the set aside to reduce an overage. The percentage of TAC set aside for the incidental catch fishery can be altered under Adaptive Management (*Section 4.6*). Under this option, landings in the incidental catch fishery do count towards the TAC.

Option E: Small-Scale Fishery Set Aside

1% of the overall TAC is set aside for **small-scale gears**. Landings by small-scale fisheries are reported by states to the Commission as a part of annual Compliance Reports; landings do not need to be reported to SAFIS, should this reporting method be implemented. If the coastwide set aside is exceeded in a given year, the overage is deducted from the subsequent year's set aside. Should quota reconciliation be chosen in *Section 4.3.3*, overages of the small-scale fishery set aside will be forgiven if the coastwide TAC is not exceeded; however, if the coastwide TAC is exceeded, "common pool" quota will not be distributed to the small-scale fishery set aside and the overage will be paid back in full the following year. Unused quota from a region or state can be transferred to the set aside to reduce an overage.

There is no trip limit for small scale gears under this set aside; however, should a gear type show a significant and persistent increase in landings, the Board may implement a trip limit

through Adaptive Management (*Section 4.6*). In addition, the percentage of TAC set aside for small-scale fisheries can be altered under Adaptive Management.

If a jurisdictional allocation method is chosen in *Section 4.3.2* and a state which only has landings by small-scale gears is allocated quota, that state may choose to add its jurisdictional quota to the small-scale fishery set aside. For example, if Florida, a state which exclusively has a cast net fishery, is allocated 0.5% of quota, the state may aggregate its state quota with the small-scale fishery set aside, making the set aside allocation 1.5%.

Landings by all other gear types' count towards the quota allocated to either states, regions, dispositions, or fleets. Once the respective quota allocation is met, the menhaden fishery is closed and no landings of menhaden are permitted by those gear types. Under this option, landings in the small scale fishery do count towards the TAC.

#### Option F: All Catch Included in TAC

All catch of menhaden, including incidental catch, counts towards the directed fishery TAC. Once the quota allocation for a specific state, region, disposition, or fleet is reached, the menhaden fishery is closed and no landings of menhaden are permitted by that state, region, disposition or fleet.

### ***4.3.6 Episodic Events Set Aside Program***

The Board may set aside a portion of the TAC for episodic events. Episodic events are defined by any instance in which a qualified state has reached its annual quota allocation available to them prior to September 1 and the state can prove the presence of unusually large amounts of menhaden in its state waters. The goal of the set aside is to add flexibility to the management of the species so that states can harvest menhaden during episodic events, reduce discards, and prevent fish kills. Eligibility to participate in the episodic events set aside program is reserved for the states of Maine, New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, and New York. Landings per year under the set aside can be found in Table 19.

#### ***4.3.6.1 TAC Set Aside***

A percentage of the TAC is set aside for use in the episodic events program.

##### Option A: 1% of TAC is Set Aside (Status quo)

1% of the overall TAC is set aside for episodic events.

##### Option B: 3% of TAC is Set Aside

3% of the overall TAC is set aside for episodic events.

##### Option C: 0% of TAC is Set Aside

No portion of the overall TAC is set aside for episodic events. Under this option, there is no episodic events program.

#### **4.3.6.2 Mandatory Provisions**

In order for an eligible state to participate in the episodic events set aside program, states must implement the following provisions.

1. Participating states must implement daily trip level harvester reporting. Each state must track landings and submit weekly reports to ASMFC staff. Should several states be approved to participate in the episodic event set aside program, ASMFC staff may require more frequent reporting to ensure the set aside is not exceeded.
2. Episodic events harvest and landings must be restricted to state waters of the jurisdiction approved to participate in the set aside.
3. Participating states must implement a maximum daily trip limit no greater than 120,000 pounds/vessel. A daily trip is defined by a calendar day such that no vessel harvesting under the episodic events program may land menhaden twice in a single calendar day.

#### **4.3.6.3 Declaring Participation**

A state must apply to participate in the episodic events program prior to September 1<sup>st</sup>. In order to apply, a state must send a letter to the ASMFC Executive Director, ISFMP Director, and FMP Coordinator declaring interest in harvesting under the set aside. The letter must demonstrate the following:

1. The state has implemented the mandatory provisions stated in Section 4.3.6.2.
2. The applying state has fully harvested its annual quota allocation prior to September 1.
  - If a coastwide quota is implemented, the coastwide quota must be reached prior to September 1.
  - If a jurisdictional quota is implemented, a state must reach its quota prior to September 1.
  - If a regional fleet-capacity quota is implemented, the gear-specific regional quota in which the state participates must be reached prior to September 1. A state within a region may apply to participate without the other states/jurisdictions within its region applying and only gear types which have reached their quota prior to September 1 are eligible to harvest under the set aside program. A state must declare in its letter to ASMFC, prior to approval to participate, which gear types will be allowed to harvest under the set aside program. Gears under a soft cap are allowed to participate in the episodic event set aside so that they can fish under a higher trip limit; these landings will count towards the episodic set aside quota.
  - If disposition quotas are implemented, the quota allocated to the bait/other sector must be reached prior to September 1. If the bait/other quota is further divided by jurisdiction or region, that state or region must reach its quota prior to September 1. A state within a region may apply to participate without the other states/jurisdictions within its region applying. If the bait/other quota is further divided by fleet, only gear types which have reached their quota prior to September 1 are eligible to harvest under the set aside program. A state must declare in its letter to ASMFC, prior to approval to participate, which gear types will be allowed to harvest under the set aside program. Gears under a soft cap are allowed to

participate in the episodic event set aside so that they can fish under a higher trip limit; these landings will count towards the episodic set aside quota.

3. The state has unusually large amounts of menhaden in its state waters. This can be demonstrated through:
  - Surveys (aerial, seine) which indicate high biomass;
  - Landings reports which indicate an unusually high rate of menhaden harvest at the time of declaration into the set aside;
  - Or information highlighting the potential for fish kills, associated human health concerns, and the ability of harvest under the set aside to reduce or eliminate the fish kill.
4. The state has not declared *de minimis* status. If a qualifying state was previously granted *de minimis* status, it will lose that status and will need to collect biological data and catch and effort data for an adult index as required by *Section 3.5: Biological Data Collection Programs*.

Once the application letter is received by ASMFC staff, the PRT will review the state's compliance with the requirements of the episodic events set aside program. Once verified, ASMFC will send a letter notifying the state that it can harvest menhaden under the set aside. Only harvest that occurs on or after the date of the aforementioned notification letter, and prior to the states eligibility ending, will be considered episodic event set aside harvest. ASMFC staff will also notify the Board when any state is approved to harvest under the set aside.

#### **4.3.6.4 Procedure for Unused Set Aside**

If an episodic event is not triggered by September 1 in any state, the unused set aside quota will be rolled into the overall TAC on September 1 and redistributed based on the allocation method and timeframe selected in *Section 4.3.2*. If an episodic event is triggered, any unused set aside as of October 31<sup>st</sup> of each year will be redistributed based on the allocation method and timeframe selected in *Section 4.3.2*.

#### **4.3.6.5 Procedure for Set Aside Overages**

If the episodic event set aside is exceeded, any overages will be deducted from the next year's episodic event set aside amount. Should quota reconciliation be chosen in *Section 4.3.3*, overages of the episodic events set aside program will be forgiven if the coastwide TAC is not exceeded; however, if the coastwide TAC is exceeded, "common pool" quota will not be distributed to the episodic events set aside and the overage will be paid back in full the following year. Unused quota from a region or state can be transferred to the set aside to reduce an overage.

#### **4.3.7 Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Cap**

The Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Cap limits allowable harvest from the Chesapeake Bay by the reduction fishery. The intent of the Cap is to prevent all of the reduction fishery harvest from occurring in the Chesapeake Bay, a critical nursery area for Atlantic menhaden. Harvest for reduction purposes shall be prohibited within the Chesapeake Bay when 100% of the cap is harvested from Chesapeake Bay, which is defined as areas shoreward of the Chesapeake Bay

Bridge Tunnel. Harvest above the Cap in any given year will be deducted from the next year's allowable harvest. Should quota reconciliation be chosen in *Section 4.3.3*, it does not apply to the Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Cap meaning overages are not forgiven if the coastwide TAC is not exceeded. Furthermore, unused quota from a region or state cannot be transferred to the Cap to reduce an overage. In recent years, reduction harvest in the Chesapeake Bay has consistently underperformed the 87,216 mt cap, with less than 45,000 mt harvest in 2014 and 2016 and less than 50,000 mt harvested in 2015.

Option A: Cap Set At 87,216 mt

The Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Cap is maintained as 87,216 metric tons.

Sub-Option A: Limited Rollover of Unused Cap Permitted

A maximum of 10,976 metric tons of un-landed fish under the Cap can be rolled over into the subsequent year. Unused landings under the Cap cannot be rolled over for multiple years and, as a result, the Cap in a given year cannot exceed 98,192 metric tons.

Sub-Option B: No Rollover of Unused Cap Permitted

Any amount of un-landed fish under the Cap cannot be rolled over into the subsequent year. As a result, the Cap in a given year cannot exceed 87,216 metric tons.

Option B: Cap Set At 51,000 mt

The Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Cap is reduced to 51,000 metric tons. This value represents an approximation of the five-year average of reduction harvest from the Chesapeake Bay between 2012 and 2016. An approximate value is used because reduction landings in the Chesapeake Bay are confidential.

Sub-Option A: Limited Rollover of Unused Cap Permitted

A maximum of 6,418 metric tons of un-landed fish under the Cap can be rolled over into the subsequent year. Unused landings under the Cap cannot be rolled over for multiple years and, as a result, the Cap in a given year cannot exceed 57,418 metric tons.

Sub-Option B: No Rollover of Unused Cap Permitted

Any amount of un-landed fish under the Cap cannot be rolled over into the subsequent year. As a result, the Cap in a given year cannot exceed 51,000 metric tons.

Option C: Remove the Cap

Under this option, there is no limit on harvest by the reduction fishery in the Chesapeake Bay.

#### **4.4 HABITAT CONSERVATION AND RESTORATION RECOMMENDATIONS**

In order to ensure the productivity of populations, each state should identify and protect critical nursery areas for Atlantic menhaden within its boundaries. Such efforts should inventory historical habitats, identify habitats presently used by menhaden, and impose or encourage measures to retain or increase the quantity and quality of Atlantic menhaden habitat.



#### ***4.4.1 Preservation of Existing Habitat***

States should provide inventories and locations of critical Atlantic menhaden habitat to other state and federal regulatory agencies. Regulatory agencies should be advised on the types of threats to Atlantic menhaden populations and recommended measures that should be employed to avoid, minimize or eliminate any threat to current habitat extent or quality.

#### ***4.4.2 Habitat Restoration and Improvement***

While Atlantic menhaden appear to be utilizing the bulk of their historic nursery areas, water quality in these areas should be maintained or improved, if impaired, to prevent hypoxic fish kills and minimize the threat of increased mortality due to disease and parasitism. Protection of wetlands will protect and improve menhaden habitat.

#### ***4.4.3 Avoidance of Incompatible Activities***

Federal and state fishery management agencies should take steps to limit the introduction of compounds which are known, or suspected, to accumulate in any animal species' tissue and which pose a threat to human health or any animals' health.

Each state should establish windows of compatibility for activities known or suspected to adversely affect Atlantic menhaden life stages and their habitats, such as navigational dredging, inlet modifications, and dredged material disposal, and notify the appropriate construction or regulatory agencies in writing.

Projects involving water withdrawal from nursery habitats (e.g. power plants, irrigation, water supply projects) should be scrutinized to ensure that adverse impacts resulting from larval/juvenile impingement, entrainment, and/or modification of flow, temperature and salinity regimes due to water removal, will not adversely impact estuarine dependent species, including Atlantic menhaden, especially early life stages.

Each state which contains Atlantic menhaden nursery areas within its jurisdiction should develop water use and flow regime guidelines which are protective of these nursery areas and which will ensure to the extent possible, the long-term health and sustainability of the stock.

#### ***4.4.4 Fishery Practices***

The use of any fishing gear or practice which is documented by management agencies to have an unacceptable impact on Atlantic menhaden (e.g. habitat damage, bycatch mortality) should be prohibited within the effected essential habitats.

#### **4.5 ALTERNATIVE STATE MANAGEMENT REGIMES**

States are required to obtain prior approval from the Board of any changes to their management program for which a compliance requirement is in effect. Changes to non-compliance measures must be reported to the Board but may be implemented without prior Board approval. A state can request permission to implement an alternative management measure to any mandatory compliance measure only if that state can show, to the Board's satisfaction, that its alternative proposal will have the same conservation value as the measure contained in this amendment or any addenda prepared under Adaptive Management (*Section 4.6*). States submitting alternative proposals must demonstrate that the proposed action will not contribute to overfishing of the resource. All changes to a state's plan must be submitted in writing to the Board and to the Commission as part of the Annual Compliance Reports.

##### ***4.5.1 General Procedures***

A state may submit a proposal for a change to its regulatory program or any mandatory compliance measure under this amendment to the Commission. Such changes shall be submitted to the Chair of the Plan Review Team (PRT), who shall distribute the proposal to appropriate groups, including the Board, the PRT, the TC, and the AP.

The PRT is responsible for gathering the comments of the TC and the AP. The PRT is also responsible for presenting these comments to the Board for decision.

The Board will decide whether to approve the state proposal for an alternative management program if it determines that it is consistent with the target fishing mortality rate applicable as well as the goals and objectives of this amendment.

In order to maintain consistency within a fishing season, new rules should be implemented prior to the start of the fishing season. Given the time needed for the TC, AP, and Board to review the proposed regulations, as well as the time required by an individual state to promulgate new regulations, it may not be possible to implement new regulations for the ongoing fishing season. In this case, new regulations should be effective at the start of the following season after a determination to do so has been made.

##### ***4.5.2 Management Program Equivalency***

The TC, under the direction of the PRT, will review any alternative state proposals under this section and provide its evaluation of the adequacy of such proposals to the Board. The PRT can also ask for reviews by the Law Enforcement Committee (LEC) or the AP.

##### ***4.5.3 De Minimis Fishery Guidelines***

The ASMFC Interstate Fisheries Management Program Charter defines *de minimis* as "a situation in which, under the existing condition of the stock and scope of the fishery, the

conservation and enforcement actions taken by an individual state would be expected to contribute insignificantly to a coastwide conservation program required by a Fishery Management Plan or amendment,” (ASMFC 2016).

A state can apply annually for *de minimis* status if a state does not have a reduction fishery, following the procedure in *Section 4.5.3.2*. To be eligible for *de minimis* consideration in the bait fishery, a state must prove that its commercial bait landings in the most recent two years for which data are available did not exceed 1% of the coastwide bait landings.

#### **4.5.3.1 Plan Requirements if De Minimis Status is Granted**

If *de minimis* status is granted, the *de minimis* state is required to implement, at a minimum, the coastwide management requirements contained in *Section 4.0*. Additionally, all *de minimis* states except New Hampshire, Pennsylvania, South Carolina, and Georgia must adhere to timely quota monitoring as approved by the Board (*Section 3.1.2*).

States granted *de minimis* status are exempt from collecting biological data and the adult CPUE index data (*Section 3.5.1.2*).

If the coastwide fishery is closed for any reason through Emergency Procedures (*Section 4.7*), *de minimis* states must close their fisheries as well.

Any additional components of the FMP, which the Board determines necessary for a *de minimis* state to implement, can be defined at the time *de minimis* status is granted.

#### **4.5.3.2 Procedure to Apply for De Minimis Status**

States must specifically request *de minimis* status each year. Requests for *de minimis* status will be reviewed by the PRT as part of the annual FMP review process (*Section 5.3: Compliance Report*). Requests for *de minimis* must be submitted to the ASMFC Atlantic Menhaden FMP Coordinator as a part of the state’s yearly compliance report. The request must contain the following information: all available commercial landings data for the current and 2 previous full years of data, commercial regulations for the current year, and the proposed management measures the state plans to implement for the year *de minimis* status is requested. The FMP Coordinator will then forward the information to the PRT.

In determining whether or not a state meets the *de minimis* criteria, the PRT will consider the information provided with the request, the most recent available coastwide landings data, any information provided by the TC and SASC, and projections of future landings. The PRT will make a recommendation to the Board to either accept or deny the *de minimis* request. The Board will then review the PRT recommendation and either grant or deny the *de minimis* classification.

The Board must make a specific motion to grant a state *de minimis* status. By deeming a given state *de minimis*, the Board is recognizing that: the state has a minimal Atlantic menhaden fishery; there is little risk to the health of the menhaden stock if the state does not implement

the full suite of management measures; and the overall burden of implementing the complete management and monitoring requirements of the FMP outweigh the conservation benefits of implementing those measures in that particular state.

If commercial landings in a *de minimis* state exceed the *de minimis* threshold, the state will lose its *de minimis* classification, will be ineligible for *de minimis* in the following year, and will be required to implement all provisions of the FMP. If the Board denies a state's *de minimis* request, the state will be required to implement all the provisions of the FMP. When a state rescinds or loses its *de minimis* status, the Board will set a compliance date by which the state must implement the required regulations.

#### **4.6 ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT**

The Board may vary the requirements specified in this Amendment as a part of adaptive management in order to conserve the Atlantic menhaden resource. The elements that can be modified by adaptive management are listed in *Section 4.6.2*. The process under which adaptive management can occur is provided below.

##### **4.6.1 General Procedures**

The PRT will monitor the status of the fishery and the resource and report on that status to the Board annually or when directed to do so by the Board. The PRT will consult with TC, the SASC, and the AP in making such review and report.

The Board will review the report of the PRT, and may consult further with the TC, SASC, or AP. The Board may, based on the PRT report or on its own discretion, direct the PDT to prepare an addendum to make any changes it deems necessary. The addendum shall contain a schedule for the states to implement the new provisions.

The PDT will prepare a draft addendum as directed by the Board, and shall distribute it to all states for review and comment. A public hearing will be held in any state that requests one. The PDT will also request comment from federal agencies and the public at large. After a 30-day review period, staff, in consultation with the PDT, will summarize the comments received and prepare a final version of the addendum for the Board.

The Board shall review the final version of the addendum prepared by the PDT, and shall also consider the public comments received and the recommendations of the TC, LEC, and AP. The Board shall then decide whether to adopt, or revise and then adopt, the addendum.

Upon adoption of an addendum by the Board, states shall prepare plans to carry out the addendum, and submit them to the Board for approval according to the schedule contained in the addendum.

#### **4.6.2 Measures Subject to Change**

The following measures are subject to change under adaptive management upon approval by the Board:

- (1) Management areas and unit
- (2) Reference points, including an overfishing and overfished definition
- (3) Rebuilding targets and schedules
- (4) TAC specification
- (5) Quota allocation
- (6) Quota transfers
- (7) Quota rollovers
- (8) Episodic events set aside program
- (9) Small scale fishery set aside
- (10) Incidental catch fishery set aside
- (11) Incidental catch provision
- (12) *De minimis* specifications
- (13) Chesapeake Bay reduction fishery cap
- (14) Effort controls
- (15) Fishing year and/or seasons
- (16) Trip limits
- (17) Limited entry
- (18) Area closures
- (19) Fishery closures
- (20) Gears assigned to fleets
- (21) Gear restrictions including mesh sizes
- (22) Recreational fishery management measures
- (23) For-hire fishery management measures
- (24) Research set aside programs
- (25) Research or monitoring requirements
- (26) Frequency of revisiting the allocation method
- (27) Frequency of stock assessments
- (28) Reporting requirements
- (29) Measures to reduce or monitor bycatch
- (30) Observer requirements
- (31) Recommendations to the Secretaries for complementary actions in federal jurisdictions
- (32) Any other management measures currently included in Amendment 3

#### **4.7 EMERGENCY PROCEDURES**

Emergency procedures may be used by the Board to require any emergency action that is not covered by, is an exception to, or a change to any provision in Amendment 3. Procedures for implementation are addressed in the ASMFC Interstate Fisheries Management Program Charter, Section Six (c)(10) (ASMFC 2016).

#### **4.8 MANAGEMENT INSTITUTIONS**

The management institutions for Atlantic menhaden shall be subject to the provisions of the ISFMP Charter (ASMFC 2016). The following is not intended to replace any or all of the provisions of the ISFMP Charter. All committee roles and responsibilities are included in detail in the ISFMP Charter and are only summarized here.

##### ***4.8.1 Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission and ISFMP Policy Board***

The ASMFC (Commission) and the ISFMP Policy Board are generally responsible for the oversight and management of the Commission's fisheries management activities. The Commission must approve all fishery management plans and amendments, including Amendment 3. The ISFMP Policy Board reviews any non-compliance recommendations of the various Boards and, if it concurs, forwards them to the Commission for action.

##### ***4.8.2 Atlantic Menhaden Management Board***

The Board was established under the provisions of the Commission's ISFMP Charter (Section Four; ASMFC 2016) and is generally responsible for carrying out all activities under this Amendment.

The Board establishes and oversees the activities of the PDT, PRT, TC, SASC, BERP Workgroup, and the AP. In addition, the Board makes changes to the management program under adaptive management, reviews state programs implementing the amendment, and approves alternative state programs through conservation equivalency. The Board reviews the status of state compliance with the management program annually, and if it determines that a state is out of compliance, reports that determination to the ISFMP Policy Board under the terms of the ISFMP Charter.

##### ***4.8.3. Atlantic Menhaden Plan Development Team***

The Plan Development Team (PDT) is composed of personnel from state and federal agencies who have scientific knowledge of Atlantic menhaden and management abilities. The PDT is responsible for preparing and developing management documents, including addenda and amendments, using the best scientific information available and the most current stock assessment information. The ASMFC FMP Coordinator chairs the PDT. The PDT will either disband or assume inactive status upon completion of Amendment 3.

##### ***4.8.4 Atlantic Menhaden Plan Review Team***

The Plan Review Team (PRT) is composed of personnel from state and federal agencies who have scientific and management ability and knowledge of Atlantic menhaden. The PRT is responsible for providing annual advice concerning the implementation, review, monitoring, and enforcement of Amendment 3 once it has been adopted by the Commission. After final

action on Amendment 3, the Board may elect to retain members of the PDT as members of the PRT, or appoint new members.

#### ***4.8.5 Atlantic Menhaden Technical Committee***

The Atlantic Menhaden Technical Committee (TC) consists of representatives from state or federal agencies, Regional Fishery Management Councils, the Commission, a university, or other specialized personnel with scientific and technical expertise, and knowledge of the Atlantic menhaden fishery. The Board appoints the members of the TC and may authorize additional seats as it sees fit. The role of the TC is to assess the species' population, provide scientific advice concerning the implications of proposed or potential management alternatives, and respond to other scientific questions from the Board, PDT, or PRT. The SASC reports to the TC.

#### ***4.8.6 Atlantic Menhaden Stock Assessment Subcommittee***

The Atlantic Menhaden Stock Assessment Subcommittee (SASC) is appointed and approved by the Board, with consultation from the Atlantic Menhaden TC, and consists of scientists with expertise in the assessment of the Atlantic menhaden population. Its role is to assess the Atlantic menhaden population and provide scientific advice concerning the implications of proposed or potential management alternatives, and to respond to other scientific questions from the Board, TC, PDT or PRT. The SASC reports to the TC.

#### ***4.8.7 Biological Ecological Reference Point Workgroup***

The Biological Ecological Reference Point Workgroup (BERP Workgroup) is comprised of representatives from each technical committee for weakfish, striped bass, bluefish, and menhaden, in addition to state and federal biologists with expertise on multispecies modeling approaches. The intent of the BERP Workgroup is to assist the Commission with its multispecies modeling efforts and facilitate the use of multispecies model results in management decisions. More specifically, the BERP Workgroup is tasked with identifying potential ecological reference points that account for Atlantic menhaden's role as a forage fish.

#### ***4.8.8 Atlantic Menhaden Advisory Panel***

The Atlantic Menhaden Advisory Panel (AP) is established according to the Commission's Advisory Committee Charter. Members of the AP are citizens who represent a cross-section of commercial and recreational fishing interests and others who are concerned about Atlantic menhaden conservation and management. The AP provides the Board with advice directly concerning the Commission's Atlantic menhaden management program.

#### **4.8.9 Federal Agencies**

##### **4.8.9.1 Management in the Exclusive Economic Zone**

Management of Atlantic menhaden in the EEZ is within the jurisdiction of the three Regional Fishery Management Councils under the Magnuson-Stevens Act (16 U.S.C. 1801 et seq.). In the absence of a Council Fishery Management Plan, management is the responsibility of the National Marine Fisheries Service as mandated by the Atlantic Coastal Fishery Cooperative Management Act.

##### **4.8.9.2 Federal Agency Participation in the Management Process**

The Commission has accorded USFWS and NMFS voting status on the ISFMP Policy Board and the Atlantic Menhaden Management Board in accordance with the Commission's ISFMP Charter. The NMFS can also participate on the Atlantic Menhaden PDT, PRT, TC and SASC.

##### **4.8.9.3 Consultation with Fishery Management Councils**

At the time of adoption of Amendment 3, none of the Regional Fishery Management Councils had implemented a management plan for Atlantic menhaden, nor had they indicated an intent to develop a plan.

#### **4.9 RECOMMENDATION TO THE SECRETARY OF COMMERCE FOR COMPLEMENTARY MEASURES IN FEDERAL WATERS**

The quota management approach adopted can be implemented and monitored within the jurisdictions of the Atlantic states. Therefore, a specific recommendation to the Secretary for complimentary action in federal jurisdictions is unnecessary at this time. The Board may consider further recommendations to the Secretary if changes to Amendment 3 occur through the adaptive management process (*Section 4.6*).

#### **4.10 COOPERATION WITH OTHER MANAGEMENT INSTITUTIONS**

The Board will cooperate, when necessary, with other management institutions during the implementation of this amendment, including NMFS and the New England, Mid-Atlantic, and South Atlantic Fishery Management Council.

#### **5.0 COMPLIANCE**

The full implementation of the provisions included in this amendment is necessary for the management program to be equitable, efficient, and effective. States are expected to implement these measures faithfully under state laws. ASMFC will continually monitor the effectiveness of state implementation and determine whether states are in compliance with the provisions of this fishery management plan.

The Board sets forth specific elements that the Commission will consider in determining state compliance with this fishery management plan, and the procedures that will govern the



evaluation of compliance. Additional details of the procedures are found in the ASMFC Interstate Fishery Management Program Charter (ASMFC 2016).

## **5.1 MANDATORY COMPLIANCE ELEMENTS FOR STATES**

A state will be determined to be out of compliance with the provision of this fishery management plan according to the terms of Section Seven of the ISFMP Charter if:

- Its regulatory and management programs to implement Amendment 3 have not been approved by the Board; or
- It fails to meet any schedule required by Section 5.2, or any addendum prepared under adaptive management (*Section 4.6*); or
- It has failed to implement a change to its program when determined necessary by the Board; or
- It makes a change to its regulations required under *Section 4* or any addendum prepared under adaptive management (*Section 4.6*), without prior approval of the Board.

### **5.1.1 Regulatory Requirements**

To be considered in compliance with this fishery management plan, all state programs must include a regime of restrictions on Atlantic menhaden fisheries consistent with the requirements of *Section 3.1: Commercial Catch and Landings Programs*; *Section 3.5: Biological Data Collection Programs*; and *Section 4.3: Commercial Fishery Management Measures*. A state may propose an alternative management program under *Section 4.5: Alternative State Management Regimes*, which, if approved by the Board, may be implemented as an alternative regulatory requirement for compliance.

States may begin to implement Amendment 3 after final approval by the Commission. Each state must submit its required Atlantic menhaden regulatory program to the Commission through ASMFC staff for approval by the Board. During the period between submission and Board approval of the state's program, a state may not adopt a less protective management program than contained in this Amendment or contained in current state law. The following lists the specific compliance criteria that a state/jurisdiction must implement in order to be in compliance with Amendment 3:

- Commercial fishery management measures as specified in *Section 4.3* including the Total Allowable Catch (*Section 4.3.1*), Overage Payback (*Section 4.3.2.1*), Quota Allocation (*Section 4.3.2*), Quota Transfers (*Section 4.3.3*), Quota Rollovers (*Section 4.3.4*), Incidental Catch and Small-Scale Fishery Provision (*Section 4.3.5*), Episodic Events Set Aside (*Section 4.3.6*), and the Chesapeake Bay Reduction Fishery Harvest Cap (*Section 4.3.7*).
- Monitoring requirements as specified in *Section 3.1*
- Fishery dependent data collection programs as specified in *Section 3.5.1*
- All state programs must include law enforcement capabilities adequate for successful implementation of the compliance measures contained in this Amendment.

- There are no mandatory research requirements at this time; however, research requirements may be added in the future under Adaptive Management, *Section 4.6*.
- There are no mandatory habitat requirements in Amendment 3. See *Section 4.4* for habitat recommendations.

## 5.2 COMPLIANCE SCHEDULE

States must implement this Amendment according to the following schedule:

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Month Day, 201X: | Submission of state programs to implement Amendment 3 for approval by the Board. Programs must be implemented upon approval by the Board.                               |
| Month Day, 201X: | States with approved management programs must implement Amendment 3. States may begin implementing management programs prior to this deadline if approved by the Board. |

## 5.3 COMPLIANCE REPORTS

Each state must submit to the Commission an annual report concerning its Atlantic menhaden fisheries and management program for the previous year, no later than April 1st. A standard compliance report format has been prepared and adopted by the ISFMP Policy Board. States should follow this format in completing the annual compliance report.

The report shall cover:

- The previous calendar year's fishery and management program including mandatory reporting programs (including frequency of reporting and data elements collected), fishery dependent data collection, fishery independent data collection, regulations in effect, total harvest (including directed landings, incidental and small-scale fishery landings, landings under the episodic events program, and landings by gear type), *de minimis* requests, and future regulatory changes.
- The planned management program for the current calendar year summarizing regulations that will be in effect and monitoring programs that will be performed, highlighting any changes from the previous year.

## 5.4 PROCEDURES FOR DETERMINING COMPLIANCE

Detailed procedures regarding compliance determinations are contained in the ISFMP Charter, Section Seven (ASMFC 2016). In brief, all states are responsible for the full and effective implementation and enforcement of fishery management plans in areas subject to their jurisdiction. Written compliance reports as specified in the Amendment must be submitted annually by each state with a declared interest. Compliance with Amendment 3 will be reviewed at least annually; however, the Board, ISFMP Policy Board, or the Commission may request the PRT to conduct a review of state's implementation and compliance with Amendment 3 at any time.

The Board will review the written findings of the PRT within 60 days of receipt of a State's compliance report. Should the Board recommend to the Policy Board that a state be determined out of compliance, a rationale for the recommended noncompliance finding will be addressed in a report. The report will include the required measures of Amendment 3 that the state has not implemented or enforced, a statement of how failure to implement or enforce required measures jeopardizes Atlantic menhaden conservation, and the actions a state must take in order to comply with Amendment 3 requirements.

The ISFMP Policy Board will review any recommendation of noncompliance from the Board within 30 days. If it concurs with the recommendation, it shall recommend to the Commission that a state be found out of compliance.

The Commission shall consider any noncompliance recommendation from the ISFMP Policy Board within 30 days. Any state that is the subject of a recommendation for a noncompliance finding is given an opportunity to present written and/or oral testimony concerning whether it should be found out of compliance. If the Commission agrees with the recommendation of the ISFMP Policy Board, it may determine that a state is not in compliance with Amendment 3, and specify the actions the state must take to come into compliance.

Any state that has been determined to be out of compliance may request that the Commission rescind its noncompliance findings, provided the state has revised its Atlantic menhaden conservation measures.

## **5.5. ANALYSIS OF THE ENFORCEABILITY OF PROPOSED MEASURES**

All state programs must include law enforcement capabilities adequate for successfully implementing that state's Atlantic menhaden regulations. The LEC will monitor the adequacy of a state's enforcement activity.

## **6.0 RESEARCH NEEDS**

The following list of research needs have been identified in order to enhance the state of knowledge of the Atlantic menhaden resource. Research recommendations are broken down into several categories: data; assessment methodology, habitat, and socio-economic. Each category is further broken down into recommendations that can be completed in the short term (within 5 years) and recommendations that will require a long term commitment (6+ years).

## **6.1 STOCK ASSESSMENT AND POPULATION DYNAMICS RESEARCH NEEDS**

### ***6.1.1 Annual Data Collection***

#### Short Term:

1. Continue current level of sampling from bait fisheries, particularly in the mid-Atlantic and New England. Analyze sampling adequacy of the reduction fishery and work with industry and states to effectively sample areas outside of that fishery.
2. Conduct ageing validation study to confirm scale to otolith comparisons. Use archived scales to do radio isotope analysis.
3. Conduct a comprehensive fecundity study.
4. Place observers on boats to collect at-sea samples from purse-seine sets.
5. Investigate relationship between fish size and school size in order to address selectivity.
6. Investigate relationship between fish size and distance from shore.
7. Evaluate alternative fleet configurations for removal and catch-at-age data.
8. Investigate inter-annual variability in the maturity of menhaden via collection of annual samples along the Atlantic coast.

#### Long Term:

1. Develop a menhaden specific coastwide fishery independent index of adult abundance at age.
2. Conduct studies on spatial and temporal dynamics of spawning.
3. Conduct studies on the productivity of estuarine environments related to recruitment.
4. Investigate environmental covariates related to recruitment.
5. Validate multispecies/ecosystem model parameters through the development and implementation of stomach sampling program that will cover major menhaden predators along the Atlantic coast. Validation of prey preferences, size selectivity and spatial overlap is critically important to the appropriate use of such model results.

### ***6.1.2 Assessment Methodology***

#### Short Term:

1. Conduct Management Strategy Evaluation (MSE) on the various reference point options (single-species, multi-species) for menhaden.
2. Continue to develop an integrated length and age based model.
3. Continue to improve methods for incorporation of natural mortality.
4. Consider estimating (time-varying) growth within the assessment model.
5. Account for co-variation among parameters and inputs in future uncertainty analyses of the assessment model.
6. Examine the variance assumption and weighting factors of all the likelihood components in the model.

Long Term:

1. Develop a seasonal spatially-explicit model, once sufficient age-specific data on movement rates of menhaden are available.
2. Continue exploring the development of multispecies models that can take predator-prey interactions into account. This should inform and be linked to the development of assessment models that allow natural mortality to vary over time.
3. Evaluate the sensitivity of reference points to recent productivity trends.
4. Reconsider models that allow natural mortality to vary over time.
5. Collect age-specific data on movement rates of menhaden to develop regional abundance trends.
6. Investigate the effects of global climate change on distribution, movement, and behavior of menhaden.

## **6.2 HABITAT RESEARCH NEEDS**

1. Study specific habitat requirements for all life history stages.
2. Develop habitat maps for all life history stages.
3. Identify migration routes of adults.
4. Study the effects of large-scale climatic events and the impacts on Atlantic menhaden.
5. Evaluate effects of habitat loss/degradation on Atlantic menhaden.

## **6.3 SOCIO-ECONOMIC RESEARCH NEEDS**

1. Develop a mechanism for estimating or obtaining data for economic analysis on the reduction fishery, due to the confidential nature of the data.
2. Conduct studies to fully recognize the linkages between the menhaden fishery and the numerous other fisheries which it supports and sustains.
3. Conduct studies on the recreational component of the menhaden fishery to better understand what gear is being used, where it is being prosecuted, disposition of the catch, and who the users may be in terms of socioeconomic issues and other factors.
4. Analyze the social aspects of the non-consumptive sector, including components of the bird watching and whale watching industries, including where they live and what their particular interests are in menhaden.

## **7.0 PROTECTED SPECIES**

In the fall of 1995, Commission member states, NMFS, and USFWS began discussing ways to improve implementation of the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) and the Endangered Species Act (ESA) in state waters. Historically, these policies had been only minimally implemented and enforced in state waters (0-3 miles). In November 1995, the Commission, through its ISFMP Policy Board, approved an amendment to its ISFMP Charter (Section Six (b)(2)) requiring protected species/fishery interactions to be discussed in the Commission's fisheries management planning process. As a result, the Commission's fishery management plans describe impacts of state fisheries on certain marine mammals and endangered species,

collectively termed "protected species". The following section outlines: (1) the federal legislation which guides protection of marine mammals and sea turtles, (2) the protected species with potential fishery interactions; (3) the specific types of fishery interaction; (4) population status of the affected protected species; and (5) potential impacts to Atlantic coast state and interstate fisheries.

## **7.1 MARINE MAMMAL PROTECTION ACT REQUIREMENTS**

Since its passage in 1972, one of the underlying goals of the MMPA has been to reduce the incidental serious injury and mortality of marine mammals in the course of commercial fishing operations to insignificant levels approaching a zero mortality and zero serious injury rate. Under the 1994 Amendments, the Act requires NMFS to develop and implement a take reduction plan to assist in the recovery of, or prevent the depletion of, each strategic stock that interacts with a Category I or II fishery. A strategic stock is defined as a stock: (1) for which the level of direct human-caused mortality exceeds the potential biological removal (PBR)<sup>1</sup> level; (2) which is declining and is likely to be listed under the Endangered Species Act (ESA) in the foreseeable future; or (3) which is listed as a threatened or endangered species under the ESA or as a depleted species under the MMPA. Category I and II fisheries are those that have frequent or occasional incidental mortality and serious injury of marine mammals, whereas Category III fisheries are those which have a remote likelihood of incidental mortality and serious injury to marine mammals. Each year NMFS publishes a List of Fisheries (LOF), which classifies commercial fisheries into one of these three categories.

Under 1994 mandates, the MMPA also requires fishermen in Category I and II fisheries to register under the Marine Mammal Authorization Program (MMAP). The purpose of this is to provide an exception for commercial fishermen from the general taking prohibitions of the MMPA. All fishermen, regardless of the category of fishery in which they participate, must report all incidental injuries and mortalities caused by commercial fishing operations within 48 hours.

Section 101(a)(5)(E) of the MMPA allows for authorization of the incidental take of ESA-listed marine mammals in the course of commercial fishing operations if it is determined that: (1) incidental mortality and serious injury will have a negligible impact on the affected species or stock; (2) a recovery plan has been developed or is being developed for such species or stock under the ESA; and (3) where required under MMPA Section 118, a monitoring program has been established, vessels engaged in such fisheries are registered, and a take reduction plan has been developed or is being developed for such species or stock. MMPA Section 101(a)(5)(E)

---

<sup>1</sup> PBR is the number of human-caused deaths per year each stock can withstand and still reach an optimum population level. This is calculated by multiplying the minimum population estimate by the stock's net productivity rate and a recovery factor ranging from 0.1 for endangered species to 1.0 for healthy stocks.

permits are not required for Category III fisheries, but any serious injury or mortality of a marine mammal must be reported.

## 7.2 ENDANGERED SPECIES ACT REQUIREMENTS

The taking of endangered sea turtles and marine mammals is prohibited and considered unlawful under Section 9(a)(1) of the ESA. In addition, NMFS or the USFWS may determine Section 4(d) protective regulations to be necessary and advisable to provide for the conservation of threatened species. There are several mechanisms established in the ESA which allow for exceptions to the prohibited take of protected species listed under the ESA. Section 10(a)(1)(A) of the ESA authorizes NMFS to allow the taking of listed species through the issuance of research permits, which allow ESA species to be taken for scientific purposes or to enhance the propagation and survival of the species. Section 10(a)(1)(B) authorizes NMFS to permit, under prescribed terms and conditions, any taking otherwise prohibited by Section 9(a)(1)(B) of the ESA if the taking is incidental to, and not the purpose of, carrying out an otherwise lawful activity. In recent years, some Atlantic state fisheries have obtained section 10(a)(1)(B) permits for state fisheries. Recent examples are at [http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/permits/esa\\_review.htm#esa10a1b](http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/permits/esa_review.htm#esa10a1b).

Section 7(a)(2) requires federal agencies to consult with NMFS to ensure that any action that is authorized, funded, or carried out by such agency is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of any listed species or result in the destruction or adverse modification of critical habitat of such species. If, following completion of the consultation, an action is found to jeopardize the continued existence of any listed species or cause adverse modification to critical habitat of such species, reasonable and prudent alternatives need to be identified so that jeopardy or adverse modification to the species does not occur. Section (7)(o) provides the actual exemption from the take prohibitions established in Section 9(a)(1), which includes Incidental Take Statements that are provided at the end of consultation via the ESA Section 7 Biological Opinions.

## 7.3 PROTECTED SPECIES WITH POTENTIAL FISHERY INTERACTIONS

A number of protected species inhabit the management unit, which includes inshore and nearshore waters, for Atlantic Menhaden. Ten are classified as endangered or threatened under the ESA; the remainder are protected under provisions of the MMPA. The species found in coastal Northwest Atlantic waters are listed below.

### Endangered

Right whale

*(Eubalaena glacialis)*

Blue Whale

*(Balaenoptera musculus)*

Fin whale

*(Balaenoptera physalus)*

Leatherback turtle

*(Dermochelys coriacea)*

Kemp's ridley

*(Lepidochelys kempii)*

## DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

Hawksbill turtle	<i>(Eretmochelys imbricata)</i>
Shortnose sturgeon	<i>(Acipenser brevirostrum)</i>
Atlantic sturgeon	<i>(Acipenser oxyrinchus oxyrinchus)</i>

### Threatened

Loggerhead turtle	<i>(Caretta caretta)</i>
North Atlantic Green turtle dps	<i>(Chelonia mydas)</i>

### MMPA

Includes all marine mammals above in addition to:

Minke whale	<i>(Balaenoptera acutorostrata)</i>
Humpback whale	<i>(Megaptera novaeangliae)</i>
Bottlenose dolphin	<i>(Tursiops truncatus)</i>
Atlantic-white sided dolphin	<i>(Lagenorhynchus acutus)</i>
Harbor seal	<i>(Phoca vitulina)</i>
Grey seal	<i>(Halichoerus grypus)</i>
Harp seal	<i>(Phoca groenlandica)</i>
Harbor porpoise	<i>(Phocoena phocoena)</i>

In the Northwest Atlantic waters, protected species utilize marine habitats for feeding, reproduction, nursery areas, and migratory corridors. For several stocks of marine mammals, including humpback whales, menhaden are an important prey species. Some species occupy the area year round while others use the region only seasonally or move intermittently nearshore, inshore, and offshore. Interactions may occur whenever fishing gear and marine mammals overlap spatially and temporally.

For sea turtles, the Atlantic seaboard provides important developmental habitat for post-pelagic juveniles, as well as foraging and nesting habitat for adults. The distribution and abundance of sea turtles along the Atlantic coast is related to geographic location and seasonal variations in water temperatures. Water temperatures dictate how early northward migrations begin each year and is a useful factor for assessing when turtles will be found in certain areas. Interactions may occur whenever fishing gear and sea turtles overlap spatially and temporally.

### **7.3.1 Marine Mammals**

Five marine mammal species are primarily known to co-occur with or become entangled in gear used by the Atlantic menhaden fishery. They include the Atlantic right whale, humpback whale, fin whale, coastal bottlenose dolphin, and harbor porpoise.

#### North Atlantic Right Whale

The North Atlantic right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*) is among the most endangered large whale species in the world. Despite decades of conservation measures, the population remains at low numbers. In 2012, 440 individually recognized whales were known to be alive (Corkeron et al., 2016). Models using data collected through the mid-1990s indicated that if the conditions



present at that time were to continue, western North Atlantic right whales would be extinct within 200 years (Caswell et al., 1999).

North Atlantic right whales have a wide distribution throughout the Atlantic Ocean but are generally found west of the Gulf Stream, from the southeast U.S. to Canada (Kenney, 2002; Waring et al., 2009). North Atlantic right whales frequent Stellwagen Bank, Jeffreys Ledge, the Bay of Fundy, and Browns Banks in the warmer months. The distribution of right whales in the summer and fall is linked to the distribution of zooplankton (Winn et al., 1986). Right whales feed by swimming continuously with their mouths open, filtering large amounts of water through their baleen and capturing zooplankton on the baleen's inner surface. Calving occurs in the winter months in coastal waters off of Georgia and Florida (Kraus et al., 1988). Mid-Atlantic waters are used as a migratory pathway from the spring and summer feeding/nursery areas to the winter calving grounds off the coast of Georgia and Florida.

The North Atlantic Right Whale is listed as endangered throughout its range. Ship strikes and fishing gear entanglements are the principal factors believed to be hindering recovery of western North Atlantic right whales population (NMFS, 2012). Data collected from 1970 through 1999 indicate that anthropogenic interactions in the form of ship strikes and gear entanglements were responsible 19 out of 45 reported right whale deaths (Knowlton and Kraus, 2001).

#### Humpback Whale

Humpback whales, known for their displays of breaching and bubble net feeding, can be found in all major oceans. In the western North Atlantic, humpback whales calve and mate in the West Indies and then migrate to northern feeding areas during the summer months. In the Gulf of Maine, sightings are most frequent from mid-March through November (CETAP, 1982). There they feed on a number of species of small schooling fish, particularly sand lance, mackerel, and Atlantic herring. Humpback whales have also been observed feeding on krill (Wynne and Schwartz, 1999).

In the western Atlantic Ocean, humpback whales have become increasingly more abundant. The overall North Atlantic population, estimated from genetic tagging data collected by the Years of the North Atlantic Humpback (YONAH) project, was estimated to be 4,894 males and 2,804 females in the 1990's. As a result, the West Indies population of humpback whales, which migrates up to New England, was not considered at risk of extinction or likely to become threatened within the foreseeable future (81 FR 62259, September 8, 2016). While not listed as endangered or threatened, the major known sources of anthropogenic mortality and injury of humpback whales are commercial fishing gear entanglements and ship strikes.

#### Fin Whale

Fin whales inhabit a wide range of latitudes between 20 to 75 degrees north and 20 to 75 degrees south (Perry et al., 1999). Like right and humpback whales, fin whales are believed to use high latitude waters primarily for feeding, and low latitude waters for calving. However, evidence regarding the location of where fin whales primarily winter, calve, and mate is still

scarce. Clark (1995) reported a general pattern of fin whale movements in the fall from the Labrador/Newfoundland region, south past Bermuda and into the West Indies, but also noted strandings along the U.S. Mid-Atlantic coast from October through January. This could suggest the possibility of an offshore calving area (Clark 1995; Hain et al. 1992). The predominant prey of fin whales varies greatly in different areas depending on what is locally available (IWC, 1992). In the western North Atlantic, fin whales feed on a variety of small schooling fish (e.g., herring, capelin, and sand lance) as well as squid and planktonic crustaceans (Wynne and Schwartz, 1999).

The fin whale is listed as endangered throughout its range. Like right whales and humpback whales, anthropogenic mortality of fin whales includes entanglement in commercial fishing gear and ship strikes (NMFS, 2011). Of 12 fin whale mortalities recorded between 2009 and 2013, nine were associated with vessel interactions (Waring et al., 2016). Experts believe that fin whales are struck by large vessels more frequently than any other cetacean (Laist et al., 2001).

#### Bottlenose Dolphin

Common bottlenose dolphins are found throughout the western Atlantic coast, with primary habitat along the U.S. ranging from New York through Florida. The distribution of the species changes seasonally, with a greater abundance of bottlenose dolphins found in the Mid-Atlantic waters in the summer (NMFS, 2008). In the winter, most bottlenose dolphins are found south of the Virginia-North Carolina border (NMFS, 2008). The species is often aggregated in groups, ranging up to 15 individuals inshore and even larger herds offshore. Bottlenose dolphins eat a variety of prey including invertebrates and fish.

On the Atlantic coast, five stocks of common bottlenose dolphins are considered depleted under the MMPA, meaning that the population stock is below its optimum sustainable level (Waring et al., 2016). The primary source of human-induced mortality is interactions with fishing gear, particularly coastal gillnets. Between 1995 and 2000, 12 bottlenose dolphin mortalities were reported in gillnets targeting dogfish, striped bass, Spanish mackerel, kingfish, and weakfish (NMFS, 2008). Four more mortalities were observed in 2003-2006 (NMFS, 2008). In response, a Bottlenose Dolphin Take Reduction Plan was implemented in May 2006 to reduce the incidental mortality and serious injury of bottlenose dolphins in commercial fishing gear (71 FR 24776, April 26, 2006).

#### Harbor Porpoise

The harbor porpoise ranges from West Greenland to North Carolina. The southern-most stock of harbor porpoise is referred to as the Gulf of Maine/Bay of Fundy stock and spends its winters in the Mid-Atlantic region. Harbor porpoises are generally found in coastal and inshore waters, but will also travel to deeper, offshore waters. There are insufficient data to determine population trends for this species because harbor porpoises are widely dispersed in small groups, they spend little time at the surface, and their distribution varies from year to year depending on environmental conditions (NMFS, 2002). Shipboard line transect sighting surveys have been conducted to estimate population size of the harbor porpoise stock. The best

estimate of abundance for the Gulf of Maine/Bay of Fundy harbor porpoise stock is 79,883 individuals from a 2011 survey (NMFS, 2016).

The Gulf of Maine harbor porpoise was proposed to be listed as threatened under the ESA on January 7, 1993, but NMFS determined this listing was not warranted (NMFS, 1999). NMFS removed this stock from the ESA candidate species list in 2001. The primary threat to the harbor porpoise is incidental catch in fishing gear, such as gillnets and trawls. The Harbor Porpoise Take Reduction Plan was implemented to reduce incidental mortality and serious injury in gillnet fisheries in the Gulf of Maine and mid-Atlantic.

#### ***7.3.1.1 Gear Interactions with Marine Mammals***

Marine mammal interactions have been documented in the primary fisheries that target menhaden, including the purse seine, pound net, and gillnet fisheries, and in those fisheries for which menhaden is bycatch, including trawl, haul seine, pound net and gillnet fisheries. The bycatch reports included below do not represent a complete list but rather available records. It should be noted that without an observer program for many of these fisheries, actual numbers of interactions are difficult to obtain.

##### Purse Seine

The U.S. mid-Atlantic menhaden purse seine fishery is currently listed as a Category II fishery while the Gulf of Maine menhaden purse seine fishery is listed as a Category III fishery (82 FR 3655, January 12, 2017).

Historically, Atlantic menhaden purse seine fishermen reported an annual incidental take of one to five coastal bottlenose dolphins (NMFS, 1991). This information comes from reports required under a small take exemption issued under the then Section 101(a)(4) of the MMPA. The Atlantic purse seine fishery reported the lethal incidental take of one minke whale in 1990 (NMFS, 1993); however, the target species of the purse seine (i.e. tuna or menhaden) is unknown. In addition, an incidental take of a humpback whale in the mid-Atlantic menhaden purse seine fishery was reported in 2001 (66 FR 6545, January 22, 2001); however, in 2005 humpback whales were removed from the list species killed or injured in the fishery because an interaction had not been reported in subsequent years. In 2006, the mid-Atlantic menhaden purse seine fishery was elevated from a Category III fishery to a Category II fishery (71 FR 48802, August 22, 2006). This change was made after interactions with bottlenose dolphins in other purse seine fisheries, such as those in the Gulf of Mexico. This required the fishery to comply with registration requirements, applicable take reduction plan requirements, and observer coverage. Limited observer coverage has occurred in the fishery since 2008.

##### Pound Nets

The Virginia pound net fishery is listed as a Category II fishery in the 2017 LOF due to documented interactions with bottlenose dolphins (82 FR 3655, January 12, 2017). Between 2004 and 2008, there were 17 bottlenose dolphins killed in pound net gear and 3 bottlenose dolphins were released alive (76 FR 37716, June 28, 2011). There is no formal observer coverage for the Virginia pound net fishery but there has been sporadic monitoring by the

Northeast Fishery Observer Program. All other Atlantic coast pound net fisheries are listed as a Category III fishery.

#### Gillnets

The mid-Atlantic gillnet fishery is listed as a Category I fishery in the 2017 LOF (82 FR 3655, January 12, 2017). The fishery was originally listed as a Category II fishery but in 2003, it was elevated to a Category I fishery after stranding and observer data documented the incidental mortality and serious injury of bottlenose dolphins (68 FR 41725, July 15, 2003). Other species with documented interactions include the harbor porpoise, common dolphin, harbor seal, harp seal, long-finned pilot whale, short-finned pilot whale, and white-sided dolphin; however, since gillnet fisheries target many species, not all incidents may have occurred while harvesting menhaden. Between 1995 and 2013, observer coverage has ranged from 1% to 5%.

The Chesapeake Bay inshore gillnet, the North Carolina inshore gillnet, the northeast anchored float gillnet, the northeast drift gillnet, and the southeast Atlantic gillnet fisheries are all listed as Category II fisheries in the 2017 LOF (82 FR 3655, January 12, 2017). The primary species reported interacting with these gears is the bottlenose dolphin; however, the harbor seal, humpback whale, and white-sided dolphin have been documented in the northeast anchored float gillnet. Both the Chesapeake Bay inshore gillnet and the North Carolina inshore gillnet fisheries were elevated from a Category III fishery to a Category II fishery in the 2006 and 2001 LOFs, respectively (66 FR 42780, August 15, 2001; 71 FR 48802, August 22, 2006).

The Delaware River inshore gillnet, the Long Island Sound inshore gillnet, the southeast Atlantic inshore gillnet, and the Rhode Island/Southern Massachusetts/New York Bight inshore gillnet fisheries are listed as Category III fisheries in the 2017 LOF (82 FR 3655, January 12, 2017). There have been no documented interactions with marine mammals in the past five years with the exception of the southeast Atlantic inshore gillnet fishery which has documented an interaction with a bottlenose dolphin.

#### Haul/Beach Seine

The Mid-Atlantic haul/beach seine fishery is listed as a Category II fishery in the 2017 LOF due to interactions with coastal bottlenose dolphin (82 FR 3655, January 12, 2017). NMFS has recorded one observed take of a bottlenose dolphin in this fishery in 1998 (Waring and Quintal 2000). Harbor porpoise was removed from the list of species killed or injured in the Mid-Atlantic haul/beach seine fishery due to no other interactions between 1999 and 2003. The fishery was observed from 1998-2001 but there has been limited observer coverage since 2001.

#### Fyke Net, Floating Fish Trap, Fish Weir

Floating fish traps, northeast and Mid-Atlantic fyke nets, and fish weirs are listed as a Category III fishery in the 2017 LOF (82 FR 3655, January 12, 2017). There are no documented interactions between marine mammals in the northeast/mid-Atlantic fyke net fishery nor the floating fish trap fisheries. In the Mid-Atlantic mixed species weir fishery there have been documented interactions with bottlenose dolphins.

### Trawls

The mid-Atlantic mid-water trawl fishery is listed as a Category II fishery in the 2017 LOF (82 FR 3655, January 12, 2017). In 2001, the mid-Atlantic mid-water trawl fishery was elevated to Category I based on mortality and injury of common dolphins and pilot whales. In 2007, the fishery was down-graded to a Category II fishery due to reductions in the interactions with common dolphins and pilot whales (72 FR 14466, March 28, 2007). The mid-Atlantic mid-water trawl fishery continues to be listed as a Category II fishery due to interactions with white-sided dolphins. Interactions with other species include the gray seal and the harbor seal. Observer coverage in the fishery has ranged from 0% to 13.33% between 1997 and 2008.

The northeast mid-water trawl fishery is also listed as a Category II fishery in the 2017 LOF (82 FR 3655, January 12, 2017). The fishery has had documented interactions with the common dolphin, gray seal, harbor seal, long-finned pilot whale, short-finned pilot whales, and minke whale. Importantly, not all mid-water trawls target menhaden as this is the primary gear used in the northeast groundfish fisheries. Observer coverage in the fishery has ranged from 0% to 19.9% between 1997 and 2008.

### Cast Net

Currently, cast net is listed as a Category III fishery in the 2017 LOF (82 FR 3655, January 12, 2017). There are no documented marine mammal species incidentally injured or killed in the cast net fishery.

### Traps/Pots

The Atlantic mixed species trap/pot fishery is listed as a Category II fishery in the 2017 LOF (82 FR 3655, January 12, 2017). The gear is primarily involved in entanglement events with species such as the fin whale and the humpback whale. Historically, the minke whale and the harbor porpoise were also listed as species injured or killed by the Atlantic mixed species trap/pot fishery but these species were removed in 2005 because interactions had not been documented in recent years. There is no observer program for this fishery.

## **7.3.2 Sea Turtles**

All sea turtles that occur in U.S. waters are listed as either endangered or threatened under the ESA. Five sea turtle species occur along the U.S. Atlantic coast, namely the loggerhead (*Caretta caretta*), Kemp's Ridley (*Lepidochelys kempi*), green (*Chelonia mydas*), leatherback (*Dermochelys coriacea*), and hawksbill (*Eretmochelys imbricata*).

### Loggerhead Turtle

The loggerhead turtle is the most abundant species of sea turtle in U.S. waters, commonly occurring throughout the inner continental shelf from Florida through Cape Cod, Massachusetts. This species is found in a wide range of habitats throughout the temperate and tropical regions of the globe, including the open ocean, continental shelves, bays, lagoons, and estuaries (NMFS, 2013). NMFS and USFWS have identified five nesting sub-populations along the northwest Atlantic Ocean. They include 1) southern Florida through Georgia; 2) Florida

through Key West; 3) the Dry Tortugas; 4) the northern Gulf of Mexico; 5) and the greater Caribbean (76 FR 58867, September 22, 2011). Nesting sites along the coast of the U.S. primarily occur from Virginia through Alabama (76 FR 58867, September 22, 2011). The activity of the loggerhead is limited by temperature, with loggerhead turtles not appearing in the Gulf of Maine before June and generally leaving by mid-September. Loggerhead sea turtles are primarily benthic feeders, opportunistically foraging on crustaceans and mollusks. Under certain conditions they also feed on finfish, particularly if they are easy to catch (*e.g.*, caught in gillnets or inside pound nets where the fish are accessible to turtles).

The northwest Atlantic population of loggerhead turtles is listed as threatened under ESA. Threats to the population include destruction of nesting habitat as the result of development and erosion, sand dredging, fishing practices, and marine pollution (76 FR 58867, September 22, 2011).

#### Kemp's Ridley

Kemp's ridley sea turtles are found throughout the Gulf of Mexico and North Atlantic coast; however their only major nesting site is in Rancho Nuevo, Tamaulipas, Mexico (Carr 1963). Juvenile Kemp's ridleys use northeastern and mid-Atlantic waters of the U.S. Atlantic coastline as primary developmental habitat, with shallow coastal embayments serving as important foraging grounds during the summer months. Juvenile ridleys migrate south as water temperatures cool, and are predominantly found in shallow coastal embayments along the Gulf Coast during the fall and winter months. Kemp's ridleys can be found from New England to Florida, and are the second most abundant sea turtle in Virginia and Maryland waters (Keinath *et al.* 1987; Musick and Limpus, 1997). In the Chesapeake Bay, ridleys frequently forage in shallow embayments, particularly in areas supporting submerged aquatic vegetation (Lutcavage and Musick, 1985; Bellmund *et al.*, 1987; Keinath *et al.*, 1987; Musick and Limpus, 1997). These turtles primarily feed on crabs, but also consume mollusks, shrimp, and fish (Bjorndal, 1997).

Kemp's ridley are listed as endangered primarily as the result of the destruction of habitat, particularly nesting habitat in Mexico, bycatch in fisheries, the harvesting of eggs and nesting turtles, and vessel collisions.

#### Green Turtle

Green turtles are distributed throughout the world's oceans, primarily between the northern and southern 20° isotherms (Hirth, 1971). Most green turtle nesting in the continental United States occurs on the Atlantic Coast of Florida, with documented nests also along the Gulf coast of Florida and the Florida Panhandle. While nesting activity is important in determining population distributions, the availability and location of foraging grounds also plays an important role in their spatial distribution. Juvenile green sea turtles occupy pelagic habitats after leaving the nesting beach and are primarily omnivorous (Bjorndal, 1985). At approximately 20 to 25 cm carapace length, juveniles leave pelagic habitats and enter benthic foraging areas, shifting to an herbivorous diet (Bjorndal, 1997). Post-pelagic green turtles feed primarily on sea grasses and benthic algae (Bjorndal, 1985). Known feeding habitats along U.S. coasts of the western Atlantic include shallow lagoons and embayments in Florida, such as the

Indian River Lagoon (Ehrhart et al., 1986). Along the Atlantic coast, green turtles can be found from Florida up to Massachusetts.

Green turtles are listed as threatened along the North Atlantic. Threats to the North Atlantic population of green turtles includes the degradation of nesting beaches due to coastal development, the degradation of forage habitat due to pollution, the illegal harvest of green turtles and their eggs, entanglement in fishing gear such as gillnets, trawls, longlines, and traps, vessel strikes, and the persistence of an often lethal disease known as fibropapillomatosis (81 FR 20057, May 6, 2016).

#### Leatherback Turtle

The leatherback is the largest living turtle and its range is farther than any other sea turtle species (NMFS, 2013). Leatherback turtles are often found in association with jellyfish, with the species primarily feeding on Cnidarians (medusae, siphonophores) and tunicates (salps, pyrosomas). While these turtles are predominantly found in the open ocean, they do occur in coastal water bodies such as Cape Cod Bay and Narragansett Bay, particularly the fall. The most significant nesting in the U.S. occurs in southeast Florida (NMFS, 2013).

The leatherback turtle is listed as endangered throughout its range. Primary causes of this population decline include the degradation of nesting beaches as the result of coastal development and beach sand mining, the poaching of eggs on nesting beaches, increased human pollution in pelagic waters, the presence of disease and parasites, and the entanglement of leatherbacks in active and abandoned fishing gear (NMFS, 2013).

#### Hawksbill Turtle

The hawksbill turtle is found throughout the world's oceans, primarily between 30°N and 30°S latitude. In the continental U.S., hawksbill turtles commonly occur in southern Florida and the Gulf of Mexico, with a preferred habitat being coral reefs and other hard bottom habitats (NMFS, 2007). Nesting sites in the Atlantic are typically found in Mexico, Puerto Rico, and the U.S. Virgin Islands (NMFS, 2007). During their juvenile life stage, hawksbill turtles occupy the pelagic environment, floating with algal mats in the Atlantic (NMFS 2007). The diet of hawksbill turtles primarily consists of sponges, invertebrates, and algae (NMFS 2007).

The hawksbill turtle is listed as endangered throughout its range. Primary threats to the population include loss of coral reef habitat, the illegal harvest of eggs and nesting females, increased recreational and commercial use of beaches, and the incidental capture of hawksbill turtles in fishing gear (NMFS 2007).

#### **7.3.2.1 Potential Impacts of Menhaden Fishery on Sea Turtles**

The Atlantic seaboard provides important developmental habitat for post-pelagic juveniles, as well as foraging and nesting habitat for adult sea turtles. The distribution and abundance of sea turtles along the Atlantic coast is related to geographic location and seasonal variations in water temperatures. Water temperatures dictate how early northward migration begins each year and is a useful factor for assessing when turtles will be found in certain areas. Moderate to

high abundances of sea turtles have been observed both offshore and nearshore when water temperatures are greater than or equal to 21° C. As a result, sea turtles do not usually appear on the summer foraging grounds in the Gulf of Maine until June, but are found in Virginia as early as April. As water temperatures decline below 11° C, abundance declines and turtles typically move from cold inshore waters in the late fall to warmer waters in the Gulf Stream, generally south of Cape Hatteras, North Carolina.

The effect of water temperature on the distribution of sea turtles is important in assessing possible interactions with the menhaden fishery. Menhaden are also affected by water temperatures and similarly migrate north in the spring and south in the fall. Thus, the menhaden purse seine fishery exhibits seasonal changes, with the fishery ramping up off North Carolina in April and extending into New England in June. Observer data indicates minimal interaction between these purse seines and sea turtles. From September 1978 through early 1980, approximately 40 sea days were observed for fish sampling aboard menhaden purse seiners fishing from Maine south to North Carolina. No sea turtles were recorded as bycatch (S. Epperly, NMFS SEFSC, pers. comm.). Other gears used to catch menhaden include trawls, fixed nets, gillnets, haul/beach seines, pound nets, and cast nets. Several states have indicated that sea turtles have been incidentally captured in menhaden fixed nets and trawls, but not seine nets (ASMFC, Atlantic Coastal Fisheries Characterization Database, unpubl. data). An observer program for protected species has not been established for the menhaden fishery. However, under the ESA Annual Determination to Implement Sea Turtle Observer Requirement (80 FR 14319, April 18, 2015), two fisheries that target menhaden are included. These include the Chesapeake Bay Inshore Gillnet Fishery and Mid-Atlantic menhaden purse seine fishery,

### **7.3.3 Atlantic Sturgeon**

The Atlantic sturgeon is an ancient anadromous fish that can live up to 60 years. Historically, sturgeon were found from Canada through Florida; however, the species currently extends through Georgia (ASMFC 1998). As adults, Atlantic sturgeon live in the ocean and migrate from the south Atlantic in the winter to New England waters in the summer (ASMFC 1998). Precise spawning locations of sturgeon are not known but it is thought that they prefer hard substrates such as rock or clay (Gilbert, 1989). As juveniles, sturgeon reside in brackish water near river mouths before moving into the coastal ocean waters. The diet of this species is primarily composed of mussels, shrimp, and small fish (ASMFC 1998).

Since 1998, there has been a moratorium on the harvest of Atlantic Sturgeon in both state and federal waters; however, the population has continued to decline and, in 2012, Atlantic sturgeon became listed under the ESA. The listing identifies five distinct population segments, which include the Gulf of Maine, the New York Bight, the Chesapeake Bay, Carolina, and the South Atlantic (77 FR 5914 and 77 FR 5880, February 6, 2012). All population segments are listed as endangered except for the Gulf of Maine population, which is listed as threatened. Primary threats to the species include historic overfishing, the bycatch of sturgeon in other fisheries, habitat destruction from dredging, dams, and development, and vessel strikes (77 FR 5914; 77 FR 5880).



Impacts on the Atlantic sturgeon population as a result of the menhaden fishery would likely occur through bycatch in gear types such as gillnets, pound nets, and purse seines. There has been no reported or observed bycatch of Atlantic sturgeon in the menhaden gillnet fisheries (77 FR 5880). Furthermore, some states have implemented measures to reduce the bycatch of sturgeon by restricting the use of gillnet gear in coastal waters and instituting seasonal closures for anchored or staked gillnets when sturgeon may be present (77 FR 5880). As a result, impacts to the sturgeon population from the menhaden fishery are thought to be limited.

#### **7.3.4 Seabirds**

Like marine mammals, seabirds are vulnerable to entanglement in commercial fishing gear. Under the Migratory Bird Treaty Act, it is unlawful “by any means or in any manner, to pursue, hunt, take, capture, [or] kill” any migratory birds except as permitted by regulation (16 U.S.C. 703). Given that an interaction has not been quantified in the Atlantic menhaden fishery, impacts to seabirds are not considered to be significant. Endangered and threatened bird species, such as the piping plover, are unlikely to be impacted by the gear types employed in the menhaden fishery. Other human activities such as coastal development, habitat degradation and destruction, and the presence of organochlorine contaminants are considered to be the major threats to some seabird populations.

### **7.4 PROPOSED FEDERAL REGULATIONS/ACTIONS PERTAINING TO THE RELEVANT PROTECTED SPECIES**

In May 2016, NMFS proposed areas of Atlantic Sturgeon critical habitat along the Atlantic coast. The proposed critical habitat primarily consisted of rivers including the Penobscot River in Maine, the Hudson River in New York, the Potomac River in Maryland, and the Neuse River in North Carolina (81 FR 36077; 81 FR 35701). Comments on the proposal were accepted through the fall of 2016; however, a final rule has not yet been released.

### **7.5 POTENTIAL IMPACTS TO ATLANTIC COASTAL STATE AND INTERSTATE FISHERIES**

There are several take reduction teams, whose management actions have potential impacts to coastal menhaden fisheries. The Northeast sink and Mid-Atlantic coastal gillnet fisheries are the two fisheries regulated by the Harbor Porpoise Take Reduction Plan (50 CFR 229.33 and 229.34). Amongst other measures, the plan uses time area closures in combination with pingers in Northeast waters, and time area closures along with gear modifications for both small and large mesh gillnets in mid-Atlantic waters. Although the plan predominately impacts the dogfish and monkfish fisheries due to higher porpoise bycatch rates, other gillnet fisheries are also affected.

The Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan (50 CFR 229.32) addresses the incidental bycatch of large baleen whales, primarily the northern right whale and the humpback whale, in several fisheries including the Northeast sink gillnet and Mid-Atlantic coastal gillnet. Amongst other

measures, the plan closes right whale critical habitat areas to specific types of fishing gear during specific seasons, and modifies fishing gear and practices. The Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Team continues to identify ways to reduce possible interactions between large whales and commercial gear. In 2014 and 2015, the Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan was modified to reduce the number of vertical lines associated with trap/pot fisheries and required expanded gear markings for gillnets and traps in Jeffrey's Ledge and Jordan Basin (79 FR 35686, June 27, 2014; 80 FR 30367, May 28, 2015).

The Bottlenose Dolphin Take Reduction Team first convened in 2001 to discuss incidental catch of coastal bottlenose dolphins in Category I and II fisheries. In 2006, a Bottlenose Dolphin Take Reduction Plan was established, which created gear regulations for the mid-Atlantic coastal gillnet fishery, the Virginia pound net fishery, the mid-Atlantic beach seine fishery, and the North Carolina inshore gillnet fishery, among others. Specifically, the plan established mesh sizes for the gill net fisheries and prohibited night fishing for some regions and gear types (71 FR 24776, April 26, 2006).

## 8.0 REFERENCES

- Adolf, J. E., C. L. Yeager, W. D. Miller, M. E. Mallonee, and L. W. Harding. 2006. Environmental forcing of phytoplankton floral composition, biomass, and primary productivity in Chesapeake Bay, USA. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 67(1-2):108- 122.
- Ahrenholz, D.W. 1991. Population biology and life history of the North American menhadens, *Brevoortia* spp. *Mar. Fish. Rev.* 53: 3-19.
- Ahrenholz, D.W., J.F. Guthrie, and R.M. Clayton. 1987. Observations of ulcerative mycosis infections on Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*). U.S. NMFS Tech. Mem. NMFS-SEFC 196. 28 p.
- Ahrenholz, D.W., W.R. Nelson, and S.P. Epperly. 1987. Population and fishery characteristics of Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*. *Fish. Bull.* 85: 569-600.
- AMAC. 2000. Atlantic Menhaden Management Review, 2000. Report to ASMFC Atlantic Menhaden Board. 18 p.
- Anderson, J.D. 2007. Systematics of the North American menhadens: molecular evolutionary reconstructions in the genus *Brevoortia* (Clupeiformes: Clupeidae). *Fishery Bulletin* 205:368-378.
- Annis, E. A., E. D. Houde, L. W. Harding, Jr., M.E. Mallonee, and M. J. Wilberg. 2011. Calibration of a bioenergetics model linking primary production to Atlantic Menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, growth in Chesapeake Bay. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* Vol. 437: 253-267.
- Anstead, K.A., J.J. Schaffler, and C.M. Jones. 2016. Coast-wide nursery contribution of new recruits to the population of Atlantic menhaden. *Trans. Am. Fish. Soc.* 145: 627-636.
- Anstead, K.A., J.J. Schaffler, and C.M. Jones. 2017. Contribution of nursery areas to the adult population of Atlantic menhaden. *Trans. Am. Fish. Soc.* 146: 36-46.
- Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan Regulations. 1999. 64 Fed. Reg. 7529 (February 16, 1999).
- Atlantic Large Whale Take Reduction Plan Regulations. 2015. 80 Fed. Reg. 30367 (May 28, 2015).
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission (ASMFC). 1992. Fishery Management Plan for Atlantic Menhaden: 1992 revision. FMR No. 22. ASMFC, Washington, D.C. 159 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 1981. Fishery Management Plan for Atlantic Menhaden. ASMFC, Washington, D.C. 146 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 1992. Fishery Management Plan for Atlantic Menhaden: 1992 revision. FMR No. 22. ASMFC, Washington, D.C. 159 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 1998. Amendment 1 to the Interstate Fishery Management Plan for Atlantic Sturgeon.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2001. Amendment 1 to The Interstate Fishery Management Plan for Atlantic Menhaden. ASMFC, Washington, D.C. 146 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2004. Addendum I to Amendment I to the Atlantic Menhaden Fishery Management Plan. ASMFC, Washington DC 52 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2004. Atlantic Menhaden Stock Assessment Report for Peer Review. Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission, Stock Assessment Report No. 04-01 (supplement). ASMFC, Washington, D.C. 145 p. 2007.06.001 WOS:000250912300003.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2005. Addendum II to Amendment 1 to the Atlantic Menhaden Fishery Management Plan. ASMFC, Washington, D.C. 30 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2006. Addendum III to Amendment 1 to the Atlantic Menhaden Fishery Management Plan. ASMFC, Washington, D.C. 6 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2009. Addendum IV to Amendment 1 to the Atlantic Menhaden Fishery Management Plan. ASMFC, Washington, D.C. 5 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2011. Addendum V to Amendment 1 to the Atlantic Menhaden Fishery Management Plan. ASMFC, Arlington, VA 17 p.

## DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2012. Amendment 2 to The Interstate Fishery Management Plan for Atlantic Menhaden. ASMFC, Arlington, VA 114 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2013. Technical Addendum I: Episodic Events Set Aside Program to Amendment 2 to the Atlantic Menhaden Fishery Management Plan. ASMFC, Arlington, VA 4 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2015. Atlantic Menhaden Southeast Data, Assessment, and Review (SEDAR) 40 Stock Assessment Report. 146 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2016. Addendum I to Amendment 2 to the Atlantic Menhaden Fishery Management Plan. ASMFC, Arlington, VA 12 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2016. Interstate Fisheries Management Program Charter. ASMFC, Arlington VA. 29 p.
- Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. 2017. Atlantic Menhaden Stock Assessment Update. ASMFC, Arlington, VA. 182p.
- Austin, H. 2002. Decadal oscillations and regime shifts, a characterization of the Chesapeake Bay Marine Climate. *In: Fisheries in a Changing Climate*. Amer. Fish. Soc. Symp. 32: 155-170.
- Austin, H. M., J. Kirkley, and J. Jucy. 1994. By-catch and the fishery for Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*) in the mid-Atlantic bight: AN assessment of the nature and extent of by-catch. VIMS, Va. Mar. Resour. Advisory No. 53, Va. Sea Grant College Prog. Publ. No. VSG-94-06, 39 p.
- Bellmund, S.A., J.A. Musick, R.C. Klinger, R.A. Byles, J.A. Keinath, and D.E. Barnard. 1987. Ecology of sea turtles in Virginia. Virginia Institute of Marine Science, College of William and Mary, Gloucester Point, Virginia.
- Berrien, P., and J. Sibunka. 1999. Distribution patterns of fish eggs in the U.S. northeast continental shelf ecosystem, 1977–1987. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 145, 310 p.
- Best, P.B., A. Branadão, and D.S. Butterworth. (2001). Demographic parameters of southern right whales off South Africa. *J. Cetacean Res. Manage. (Special issue) 2*: 161- 169.
- Bjorndal KA. 1985. Nutritional ecology of sea turtles. *Copeia* 3:736– 751. doi:10.2307/1444767
- Bjorndal, K. A. 1997. Foraging ecology and nutrition of sea turtles. Pages 199-231 in P. L. Lutz and J. A. Musick, editors. *The biology of sea turtles*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida, USA.
- Blazer, V. S., C. A. Ottinger and C. L. Densmore. 2007. Chapter 13. Factors affecting fish health. pp.54-59. *In: Phillips, S. W. (ed.). Synthesis of U.S. Geological Survey science for the Chesapeake Bay ecosystem and implications for environmental management*. U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1316.
- Bottlenose Dolphin Take Reduction Plan Regulations. 2006. 71 Fed. Reg. 24776 (April 26, 2006).
- Brandt, S. B., and D. M. Mason. 2003. Effect of nutrient loading on Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*) growth rate potential in the Patuxent River. *Estuaries* 26(2A):298- 309.
- Brush, G. S. 1986. Geology and paleoecology of Chesapeake Bay: A long-term monitoring tool for management. *J. Wash. Acad. Sciences* 76: 146-160.
- Brush, G.S. 2009. Historical land use, nitrogen, and coastal eutrophication: A paleoecological perspective. *Estuar. Coast.* 32: 18-28.
- Buchheister, A., T.J. Miller, E.D. Houde, D.H. Secor, and R.J. Latour. 2016. Spatial and temporal dynamics of Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*) recruitment along the Northwest Atlantic Ocean. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 73: 1147-1159.
- Burkholder, J. M., A. S. Gordon, P. D. Moeller, J. M. Law, K. J. Coyne, A. J. Lewitus, J. S. Ramsdell, H. G. Marshall, N. J. Deamer, S. C. Cary, J. W. Kempton, S. L. Morton, and P. A. Rublee. 2005. Demonstration of toxicity to fish and to mammalian cells by *Pfiesteria* species: Comparison of assay methods.

## DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

- Burkholder, J. M., E. J. Noga, C. W. Hobbs, H. B. Glasgow, and S. A. Smith. 1992. New “phantom” dinoflagellate is the causative agent of major estuarine fish kills. *Nature* 358:407-410 (see correction in *Nature* 360:768).
- Burnett, L. E. (1997). The challenge of living in hypoxic and hypercapnic aquatic environments. *American Zoology* 37: 633-640.
- Burton, D. T., L. B. Richardson, and C. J. Moore. 1980. Effect of oxygen reduction rate and constant low dissolved oxygen concentration on two estuarine fish. *Trans. Am. Fish. SOC.* 109:552-557.
- Burton, D. T., P. R. Abell, and T. P. Capizzi. 1979. Cold Shock effect of rate of thermal decrease on Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.* 10:347-349.
- Carr, A. 1963. Panspecific reproductive convergence in *Lepidochelys kempii*. *Ergebnisse der Biologie* 26:298-303.
- Caswell, H., M. Fujiwara and S. Brault. (1999). Declining survival probability threatens the north Atlantic right whale. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.* 96:3308-3313.
- CETAP. 1982. A characterization of marine mammals and turtles in the mid- and north Atlantic areas of the U.S. outer continental shelf. Cetacean and Turtle Assessment Program, University of Rhode Island. Final Report #AA551- CT8-48 to the Bureau of Land Management, Washington, DC, 538 pp.
- Checkley, D.M., Jr., S. Raman, G.L. Maillet and K.M. Mason. 1988. Winter storm effects on the spawning and larval drift of a pelagic fish. *Nature* 335(6188): 346-348.
- Christmas, J.Y., G. Gunter, and E.C. Whatley. 1960. Fishes taken in the menhaden fishery of Alabama, Mississippi and eastern Louisiana. U.S. FWS, Spec. Sci. Rep. Fish. No. 339, 10 p.
- Clagett, P.R. 2007. Human population growth and land-use change. *In*: Phillips, S.W. (ed). *Synthesis of U.S. Geological Survey Science for the Chesapeake Bay Ecosystem and Implications for Environmental Management: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 1316.* 63 p.
- Clapham, P.J. & Mayo, C.A. 1987. Reproduction and recruitment of individually identified humpback whales, *Megaptera novaeangliae*, observed in Massachusetts Bay, 1979-1985. *Can.. J. of Zool.* 65: 2853-2863.
- Clark, C. W. 1995. Application of US Navy underwater hydrophone arrays for scientific research on whales. *Reports of the International Whaling Commission* 45: 210-212.
- Cooper, R. A. 1965. An unusually large menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus* (Latrobe), from Rhode Island. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*, 94:412.
- Corkeron, P., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P.E. Rosel, editors. 2016. Draft U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stocks Assessments, 2016. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-NE-xxx. 343 p.
- Critical Habitat for the Endangered Carolina and South Atlantic Distinct Population Segments of Atlantic Sturgeon. 2016. 81 Fed. Reg. 36077 (June 3, 2016).
- Cross, F.A., D.S. Peters, and W.E. Schaaf. 1985. Implications of waste disposal in coastal waters on fish populations, pp. 383-399 *In*: Cardwell, R.D., R. Purdy, and R.C. Bahner (eds). *Aquatic Toxicology and Hazard Assessment: Seventh Symposium.* ASTM STP854. Amer. Soc. for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia.
- Designation of Critical Habitat for the Gulf of Maine, New York Bight, and Chesapeake Bay Distinct Population Segments of Atlantic Sturgeon. 2016. 81 Fed. Reg. 35701 (June 3, 2016).
- Determination of Nine Distinct Population Segments of Loggerhead Sea Turtles as Endangered or Threatened; Final Rule. 76 Fed. Reg. 58868 (September 22, 2011).
- Dryfoos, Robert L., Randall P. Cheek, and Richard L. Kroger. 1973. Preliminary analyses of Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, migrations, population structure, survival and exploitation rates, and availability as indicated from tag returns. *Fishery Bulletin* 71(3):719-734.

DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

- Durbin, A.G. and E.G. Durbin. 1998. Effects of menhaden predation on plankton populations in Narragansett Bay, Rhode Island. *Estuaries* 21(3): 449-465.
- Durbin, A.G., and E.G. Durbin. 1975. Grazing rates of the Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, as a function of particle size and concentration. *Mar. Biol. (Berl.)* 33: 265-277.
- Dykstra, M., and A. S. Kane. 2000. *Pfiesteria piscicida* and ulcerative mycosis of Atlantic Menhaden — Current status of understanding. *J. of Aquatic Animal Health* 12: 18-25.
- Edward, J.L. 2009. An RNA:DNA-based index of growth in juvenile Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*): laboratory calibration and field assessment. University of Maryland, Marine-Estuarine Environmental Sciences, Masters Sci. thesis.
- Ehrhart, L.M., R.B. Sindler, and B.E. Witherington. 1986. Preliminary investigation of papillomatosis in green turtles: phase I--frequency and effects on turtles in the wild and in captivity. Final report to U.S. Department Commerce; NOAA, NMFS, Miami Laboratory. Contract No. 40-GENF-6-00601.
- Endangered Species Act of 1973, Pub L. No. 93-205, 16 U.S.C. § 1531, 87 Stat. 884 (1973).
- Ferraro, S. P. 1980. Embryonic development of Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, and a fish embryo age estimation method. *U.S. Natl. Mar. Fish. Serv. Fish. Bull.* 77:943-949.
- Final Listing Determinations for Two Distinct Population Segments of Atlantic Sturgeon (*Acipenser oxyrinchus*) in the Southeast. 77 Fed. Reg. 5914 (February 6, 2012).
- Final rule to List Eleven Distinct Population Segments of the Green Sea Turtle (*Chelonia mydas*) as Endangered or Threatened and Revision of Current Listings Under the Endangered Species Act; Final Rule. 81 Fed. Reg. 20057 (April 6, 2016).
- Forward, Jr., R.B., M.C. De Vries, R.A. Tankersley, D. Rittschof, W.F. Hettler, J.S. Burke, J.M. Welch and D.E. Hoss. 1999. Behaviour and sensory physiology of Atlantic menhaden larvae, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, during horizontal transport. In: Crowder, L.B. and F.E. Werner (eds.) *Fisheries Oceanography of the Estuarine-Dependent Fishes of the South Atlantic Bight*. Fish. Oceanogr. 8(suppl. 2): 37-56.
- Friedland KD, Hare JA. 2007. Long-term trends and regime shifts in sea surface temperature on the continental shelf of the northeast United States. *Cont Shelf Res.* 27(18):2313–28. doi: 10.1016/J.Csr.
- Friedland, K. D., D. W. Ahrenholz, J. W. Smith, M. Manning, and J. Ryan. 2006. Sieving functional morphology of the gill raker feeding apparatus of Atlantic menhaden. *J. Exp. Zool.* 305A:974-985.
- Friedland, K. D., Patrick D. Lynch, and Christopher J. Gobler. 2011. Time Series Mesoscale Response of Atlantic Menhaden *Brevoortia tyrannus* to Variation in Plankton Abundances. *Journal of Coastal Research: Volume 27, Issue 6: pp. 1148 – 1158.*
- Friedland, K.D., D.W. Ahrenholz, and J.F. Guthrie. 1989. Influence of plankton on distribution patterns of the filter-feeder *Brevoortia tyrannus* (Pisces, Clupeidae). *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 54: 1-11.
- Friedland, K.D., D.W. Ahrenholz, and J.F. Guthrie. 1996. Formation and seasonal evolution of Atlantic menhaden juvenile nurseries in coastal estuaries. *Estuaries* 19(1): 105-114.
- Friedland, K.D., L.W. Haas, and J.V. Merriner. 1984. Filtering rates of the juvenile Atlantic menhaden *Brevoortia tyrannus* (Pisces: Clupeidae), with consideration of the effects of detritus and swimming speed. *Mar. Biol. (Berl.)* 84: 109-117.
- Geer, R.L. 2008. Shadow on the Chesapeake. *Chesapeake Quarterly* 7(3): 4-13.
- Gilbert, R.J., and AR. Heidt. 1979. Movements of the short nose sturgeon, *Acipenser brevirostrum*, in the Altamaha River. *Assoc. Southeastern Biol. Bull.* 26:35.
- Goetz, S. J., and P. Jantz. 2006. Sattelite maps show Chesapeake Bay urban development. *EOS* 87(15): 149, 152.

DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

- Goshorn, D., J. Deeds, P. Tango, C. Poukish, A. Place, M. McGinty, W. Butler, C. Lockett, and R. Magnien. 2004. Occurrence of *Karlodinium micrum* and its association with fish kills in Maryland Estuaries. In Proceedings of the Tenth International Conference on Harmful Algae, St. Petersburg, FL.
- Gottlieb, S.J. 1998. Ecological role of Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*) in Chesapeake Bay and implications for management of the fishery. MS Thesis, U. of MD, MEES Program. 112 p.
- Greer, R.L. 1915. The menhaden fishing industry of the Atlantic coast. Rep. U.S. Comm. Fish., 1914, Append. 3, 27 p.
- Hain, J. H. W., M. J. Ratnaswamy, R. D. Kenney, and H. E. Winn. 1992. The fin whale, *Balaenoptera physalus*, in waters of the northeastern United States continental shelf. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 42: 653-669.
- Hall Jr., L.W., S.A. Fisher, and J.A. Sullivan. 1991. A synthesis of water quality and contaminants data for the Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*: implications for Chesapeake Bay. J. Environ. Sci. Health Part A Environ. Sci. Eng. 26: 1513-1544.
- Harbor Porpoise Take Reduction Plan Regulations. 1998. 63 Fed. Reg. 66464 (December 2, 1998).
- Harbor Porpoise Take Reduction Plan Regulations. 2013. 78 Fed. Reg. 61821 (October 4, 2013).
- Hare, J. A. and J. J. Govoni. 2005. Comparison of average larval fish vertical distributions among species exhibiting different transport pathways on the southeast United States continental shelf. Fish. Bull., U.S. 103:728-736.
- Hare, J. A., S. Thorrold, H. Walsh, C. Reiss, A. Valle-Levinson and C. Jones. 2005. Biophysical mechanisms of larval fish ingress into Chesapeake Bay. Marine Ecology Progress Series 303:295-310.
- Harrison, R.W. 1931. The menhaden industry. U.S. Bur. Fish., Invest. Rep. 1, 113 p.
- Hettler Jr., W.F., and A.J. Chester. 1990. Temporal distribution of ichthyoplankton near Beaufort Inlet, North Carolina. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 68: 157-168.
- Hettler, W. F., and D. R. Colby. 1979. A1 teration of heat resistance of Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, by photoperiod. J. Comp. Biochem. Physiol. 63A: 141-143.
- Hettler, W. F., Jr., D. S. Peters, D. R. Colby, and L. H. Laban. 1997. Daily variability in abundance of larval fishes inside Beaufort Inlet. Fish. Bull. 95:477-493.
- Hettler, W.F. 1976. Influence of temperature and salinity on routine metabolic rate and growth of young Atlantic menhaden. J. Fish. Biol. 8: 55-65.
- Hettler, W.F. 1981 Spawning and rearing Atlantic menhaden. Prog. Fish-Cult. 43:80-84.
- Higham, J.R., and W.R. Nicholson. 1964. Sexual maturation and spawning of Atlantic menhaden. Fish. Bull. 63: 255-271.
- Hilborn, R., Amoroso, R. O., Bogazzi, E., Jensen, O. P., Parma, A. M., Szuwalski, C., and C. J. Walters. 2017. When does fishing forage species affect their predators? Fisheries Research. 191:211-221.
- Hilgartner, W. B. and G.S. Brush. 2006. Prehistoric habitat stability and post-settlement habitat change in a Chesapeake Bay freshwater tidal wetland, USA. Holocene 16:479-494.
- Hirth, H.F. 1971. Synopsis of biological data on the green turtle *Chelonia* & (Linnaeus) 1758. FAO Fish. Synop. 85:I-8, 19.
- Houde unpublished. 2011. Unpublished data. Larval ingress research supported by NOAA Chesapeake Bay Office, Maryland DNR, and Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission. University of Maryland Center for Environmental Science, Chesapeake Biological Laboratory, Solomons, MD.
- Houde, E. D. and L. W. Harding, Jr. 2009. Menhaden abundance and productivity in Chesapeake Bay: linking the environment and primary production to variability in fish recruitment. Final Report to NOAA Chesapeake Bay Office, Annapolis, MD. Grant No. NA04NMF4570359. Ref. No.
- Houde, E. D., Annis, E. R., Harding, L. W., Mallonee, M. E., and M. J. Wilberg. 2016. Factors affecting the abundance of age-0 Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*) in Chesapeake Bay. ICES Journal of Marine Science, 73(9):2238-2251.

- Hughes, A. R., S. L. Williams, C. M. Duarte, K. L. Heck, Jr., and M. Waycott. 2009. Associations of concern: declining seagrasses and threatened dependent species. *Front. Ecol. Environ.* 7(5): 242-246.
- Humphrey, J., Wilberg, M.J., Houde E.D. & M. C. Fabrizio. 2014. Effects of Temperature on Age-0 Atlantic Menhaden Growth in Chesapeake Bay. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*. Vol. 143. Pages 1255-1265.
- Identification of 14 Distinct Population Segments of the Humpback Whale (*Megaptera novaeangliea*) and Revision of Species-Wide Listing; Final Rule. 81 Fed. Reg. 62259 (September 8, 2016).
- International Whaling Commission. 1992. Report of the comprehensive assessment special meeting on North Atlantic fin whales. *Rep. int. Whal. Commn* 42:595B644.
- Judy, M.H., and R.M. Lewis. 1983. Distribution of eggs and larvae of Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, along the Atlantic coast of the United States. *U.S. NMFS. Spec. Sci. Rep. Fish.* 774. 23 p.
- June, F.C., and J.L. Chamberlin. 1959. The role of the estuary in the life history and biology of Atlantic menhaden. *Proc. Gulf Carib. Fish. Inst.* 11: 41-45.
- Katona, S. K., and J. A. Beard. 1990. Population size, migrations, and feeding aggregations of the humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in the western North Atlantic Ocean. *Rep. int. Whal. Commn. Special Issue* 12: 295- 306.
- Keinath, J.A., J.A. Musick, and R.A. Byles. 1987. Aspects of the biology of Virginia sea turtles: 1979-1986. *Virginia Journal of Science* 38(2):81.
- Kendall, A.W. and J.W. Reintjes. 1975. Geographic and hydrographic distribution of Atlantic menhaden eggs and larvae along the middle Atlantic coast from R/V Dolphin cruises, 1965-1966. *NMFS Fish. Bull.* 73: 317-355.
- Kenney, R. D. 2002. North Atlantic, North Pacific and southern right whales. Pages 806- 813 In W. F. Perrin, B. Wursig, J. G. M. Thewissen (eds.), *Encyclopedia of marine mammals*. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.
- Kimmel, D. G., W. D. Miller, L. W. Harding Jr., E. D. Houde, and M. R. Roman. 2009. Estuarine ecosystem response captured using a synoptic climatology. *Estuaries and Coasts*. 32:3: 403-409.
- Kiryu, Y., J. D. Shields, W. K. Vogelbein, D. E. Zwerner, and H. Kator. 2002. Induction of skin ulcers in Atlantic menhaden by injection and aqueous exposure to the zoospores of *Aphanomyces invadans*. *J. of Aquatic Animal Health* 14(1): 11-24.
- Kleisner, K.M., M.J. Fogarty, S. McGee, A. Barnett, P. Fratantoni, J. Greene, J.A. Hare, S.M. Lucey, C. McGuire, J. Odell, and V.S. Saba. 2016. The effects of sub-regional climate velocity on the distribution and spatial extent of marine species assemblages. *PLoS ONE* 11(2): e0149220. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0149220
- Knowlton, A.R. and S.D. Kraus. 2001. Mortality and serious injury of North Atlantic right whales (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in the North Atlantic Ocean. *J. Cetacean Res. Manage. (Special Issue)* 2: 193-208.
- Kraus, S. D., M. J., Crone and A. R. Knowlton. 1988. The North Atlantic right whale. Pages 684-698 in W. J. Chandler, ed. *Audubon Wildlife Report, 1988/1989*. Academic Press, New York, NY.
- Kroger, R. L., J. F. Guthrie, and M. H. Judy. 1974. Growth and first annulus formation of tagged and untagged Atlantic menhaden. *Trans. Am. Fish. SOC.* 103:292-296.
- Laist, D. W., Knowlton, A. R., Mead, J. G., Collet, A. S. and Podesta, M. 2001. Collisions between ships and whales. *Marine Mammal Science* 17(1): 35-75.
- Laney, Wilson, Personal Communication. USFWS. March 2017.
- Levine, J. F. 1990b. Species distribution of ulcerative lesions on finfish in the Tar-Pamlico River Estuary, North Carolina. *Dis. of Aquatic Org.* 8:1-5.



DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

- Levine, J. F., J. H. Hawkins, M. J. Dykstra, E. J. Noga, D. W. Moye, and R. S. Cone 1990a. Epidemiology of Ulcerative Mycosis in Atlantic Menhaden in the Tar-Palmico River Estuary, North Carolina. *J. of Aquatic Animal Health* 2:162-171.
- Lewis R. M. and W. F. Hettler, Jr. 1968. Effect of temperature and salinity on the survival of young Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*. *Trans. Am. Fish. Soc.* 97: 344-349.
- Lewis, R. M. 1965. The effect of minimum temperature on the survival of larval Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*. *Trans. Am. Fish. Soc.* 94: 409-412.
- Lewis, R.M. 1966. Effects of salinity and temperature on survival and development of larval Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*. *Trans. Am. Fish. Soc.* 95: 423-426.
- Lewis, R.M., and W.C. Mann. 1971. Occurrence and abundance of larval Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, at two North Carolina Inlets with notes on associated species. *Trans. Am. Fish. Soc.* 100: 296-301.
- Lewis, R.M., D.W. Ahrenholz, and S.P. Epperly. 1987. Fecundity of Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*. *Estuaries* 10(4): 347-350.
- Lewis, V.P., and D.S. Peters. 1984. Menhaden - a single step from vascular plant to fishery harvest. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.* 84: 95-100.
- Light, P.R., and K.W. Able. 2003. Juvenile Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*) in Delaware Bay, USA are the result of local and long-distance recruitment. *Estuar. Coast. Shelf. S.* 57:1007-1014.
- List of Fisheries for 2001. 66 Fed. Reg. 42780 (August 15, 2001).
- List of Fisheries for 2003. 68 Fed. Reg. 41725 (July 15, 2003).
- List of Fisheries for 2006. 71 Fed. Reg. 48802 (August 22, 2006).
- List of Fisheries for 2007. 72 Fed. Reg. 14466 (March 28, 2007).
- List of Fisheries for 2012. 76 Fed. Reg. 73911 (November 29, 2011).
- List of Fisheries for 2017. 82 Fed. Reg. 3655 (January 12, 2017).
- Lorenzen, K. 1996. The relationship between body weight and natural mortality in juvenile and adult fish: A comparison of natural ecosystems and aquaculture. *Journal of Fish Biology* 49:627-647.
- Love, J. W., A. K. Johnson and E. B. May. 2006. Spatial and temporal differences of Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*) recruitment across major drainages (1966-2004) of the Chesapeake Bay watershed. *Estuaries and Coasts* 29:794-801.
- Lozano, C. and E. D. Houde. 2013. Factors contributing to variability in larval ingress of Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science*, 118:1-10.
- Lozano, C., Houde, E. D., Wingate, R. L., and D. H. Sector. 2012. Age, growth and hatch dates of ingressing larvae and surviving juveniles of Atlantic menhaden *Brevoortia tyrannus*. *Journal of Fish Biology*, 81:1665-1685.
- Luo, J., K. J. Hartman, S. B. Brandt, C. F. Cerco, and T. H. Rippeto. 2001. A spatially-explicit approach for estimating carrying capacity: an application for the Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*) in Chesapeake Bay. *Estuaries* 24(4):545-556.
- Lutcavage, M. and J.A. Musick. 1985. Aspects of sea turtle biology in Virginia. *Copeia* 2:449- 456.
- Lynch, A. J., J. R. McDowell, J. E. Graves. 2010. A molecular genetic investigation of the population structure of Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*). *Fishery Bulletin* 108:87-97.
- Lynch, P.D., M.J. Brush, E.D. Condon, and R.J. Latour. 2010. Net removal of nitrogen through ingestion of phytoplankton by Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*) in Chesapeake Bay. *Marine Ecological Progress Series* 401: 195-209.
- Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act, Pub. L. No. 94-265, 16 U.S.C. § 1801 et seq., 90 Stat. 331 (1976).
- Manderson, John, Personal Communication. NOAA Northeast Fishery Science Center. April 2017.
- Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972 As Amended, Pub. L. No. 92-522, 16 U.S.C. § 11361-1362, 1371-1389, 1401-1407, 1411-1418, 1421-1421h, 1423-1423h, 86 Stat. 1027 (1972).

## DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

- MDSG, 2009. EBFM Menhaden Species Team. Ecosystem-Based Fisheries Management For Chesapeake Bay: Menhaden Background and Issue Briefs. Maryland Sea Grant, College Park, MD. UM-SG-TS-2009-08.
- Miller, W. D., and L. W. Harding, Jr. 2007. Climate forcing of the spring bloom in Chesapeake Bay. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 331:11-22.
- Musick, J. A., and C. J. Limpus. 1997. Habitat utilization and migration in juvenile sea turtles. Pages 137-164 in P. L. Lutz and J. A. Musick, editors. *The biology of sea turtles*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida, USA.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 1991. Proposed regime to govern the interactions between marine mammals and commercial fishing operations after October 1, 1993. Draft Environmental Impact Statement, June 1991.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 1993. Report on Implementation of the Marine Mammal Protection Act Interim Exemption Program, 1988-1993. Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, NOAA. 63 pp.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 1995. Status Reviews of Sea Turtles Listed Under the Endangered Species Act of 1973. Silver Spring, MD.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 1997. Fin Whale (*Balaenoptera physalus*): Western North Atlantic Stock.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 1999. Endangered Species Act Section 7 Consultation. Biological Opinion. Consultation Regarding the Federal Atlantic Herring Fishery.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 2002. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments – 2002.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 2007. Hawksbill Sea Turtle (*Eretmochelys imbricata*) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. Office of Protected Resources. Silver Spring, MD.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 2008. Bottlenose Dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*): Western North Atlantic Coastal Morphotype Stocks.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 2011. Fin Whale (*Balaenoptera physalus*) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. Office of Protected Resources. Silver Spring, MD.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 2012. North Atlantic Right Whale 5 Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. Northeast Regional Office. Gloucester, MA.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 2013. Biological Report on the Designation of Marine Critical Habitat for the Loggerhead Sea Turtle, *Caretta caretta*.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 2013. Leatherback Sea Turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea*) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. Office of Protected Species, Silver Spring, MD.
- National Marine Fisheries Service. 2015. Standardized Bycatch Reporting Methodology: An Omnibus Amendment to the Fishery Management Plans of the Mid-Atlantic and New England Regional Fishery Management Councils.
- Nelson, W.R., M.C. Ingham, and W.E. Schaaf. 1977. Larval transport and year-class strength of Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*. *Fish. Bull.* 75: 23-41.
- Nicholson, W.R. 1972. Population structure and movements of Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, as inferred from back-calculated length frequencies. *Ches. Sci.* 13: 161-174.
- Nicholson, W.R. 1978. Movements and population structure of Atlantic menhaden indicated by tag returns. *Estuaries* 1(3): 141-150.
- Noga, E. J. and M. J. Dykstra. 1986. Oomycete fungi associated with Ulcerative Mycosis in Menhaden, *Brevoortia-tyrannus* (Latrobe). *Journal of Fish Diseases* 9(1):47-53.
- Noga, E. J., J. F. Levine, M. J. Dykstra, and J. H. Hawkins. 1988. Pathology of ulcerative mycosis in Atlantic menhaden *Brevoortia tyrannus*. *Dis. of Aquatic Org.* 4: 189-197.
- Nordlie, F. G. 1976. Influence of environmental temperature on plasma ionic and osmotic concentrations in *Mugil cephalus*. *L. Comp. Biochem. Physiol.* 55A:379-381.

- Nordlie, F. G., W. A. Szelistowski, and W. C. Nordlie. 1982 Ontogenesis of osmotic regulation in the striped mullet, *Mugil cephalus*. L. J. Fish Biol. 20:79-86.
- North Carolina Department of Environmental Quality. 2015. North Carolina Division of Water Resources Annual Report of Fish Kill Events 2015. North Carolina Department of Environmental Quality Division of Water Resources, Raleigh, NC.
- Berkson, J., L. Barbieri, S. Cadrin, S. L. Cass-Calay, P. Crone, M. Dorn, C. Friess, D. Kobayashi, T. J. Miller, W. S. Patrick, S. Pautzke, S. Ralston, M. Trianni. 2011. Calculating Acceptable Biological Catch for Stocks That Have Reliable Catch Data Only (Only Reliable Catch Stocks – ORCS). NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFSC- 616, 56 P.
- Orth, R. J., T. J. B. Carruthers, W. G. Dennison, C. M. Duarte, J. W. Fourqurean, K. L. Heck, Jr., A. R. Hughes, G. A. Kendrick, W. J. Kenworthy, S. Olyarnik, F. T. Short, M. Waycott, and S. L. Williams. 2006. A global crisis for seagrass ecosystems. *BioScience* 56(12): 987-996.
- Oviatt, A. 1977. Menhaden, sport fish and fishermen, p. 53-66 In: Clepper, H. [Ed.] *Marine recreational fisheries 2. Sport Fish. Inst.*, 220 p.
- Oviatt, C.A., A.L. Gall, and S.W. Nixon. 1972. Environmental effects of Atlantic menhaden on surrounding waters. *Chesapeake Sci.* 13: 321-323.
- Paerl, H. W., J. L. Pickney, J. M. Fear, and B. L. Peierls. 1998. Ecosystem responses to internal and watershed organic matter loading: consequences for hypoxia in the eutrophying Neuse River Estuary, North Carolina, USA. *Marine Ecol. Progress Ser.* 166: 17-25.
- Perry S. L., DeMaster D. P. and Silber G. K. 1999. The fin whale. *Marine Fish Review* 61(1): 44-51.
- Pershing, A. J., Alexander, M. A., Hernandez, C. M., Kerr, L. A., Bris, A. L. Mills, K. E., Nye, J. A., Record, N. R., Scannell, H. A., Scott, J. D., Sherwood, G. D., and A. C. Thomas. 2015. Slow adaptation in the face of rapid warming leads to collapse of the Gulf of Maine cod fishery. *Science*, Vol. 350, Issue 6262: 809-812.
- Peters, D.S., and V.P. Lewis. 1984. Estuarine productivity: Relating trophic ecology to fisheries, p. 255-264 In: B.J. Copeland, K. Hart, N. Davis and S. Friday, (eds.) *Research Managing the Nation's Estuaries*. UNC Sea Grant College, Pub. UNC-SG-84-08, 420 p.
- Peters, D.S., and W.E. Schaaf. 1981. Food requirements and sources for juvenile Atlantic menhaden. *Trans. Am. Fish. Soc.* 110: 317-324.
- Poukish, Charles, Personal Communication. Environmental Assessment Division, Maryland Department of the Environment. March 2017.
- Quinlan, J.A., B.O. Blanton, T.J. Miller, and F.E. Werner. 1999. From spawning grounds to the estuary: using linked individual-based and hydrodynamic models to interpret patterns and processes in the oceanic phase of Atlantic menhaden *Brevoortia tyrannus* life history. *Fish. Ocean.* 8 (Supplement 2): 224-246.
- Reimschuessel, R., C. M. Gieseke, C. Driscoll, A. Baya, A. S. Kane, V. S. Blazer, J. J. Evans, M. L. Kent, J. D. W. Moran and S. L. Poynton. 2003. Myxosporean plasmodial infection associated with ulcerative lesions in young-of-the-year Atlantic menhaden in a tributary of the Chesapeake Bay, and possible links to *Kudoa clupeiidae*. *Diseases Aquatic Organisms* 53:143-166.
- Reintjes, J.W., and A. Pacheco. 1966. The relation of menhaden to estuaries. *Am. Fish. Soc. Spec. Publ.* 3: 50-58.
- Reish, R.L., R.B. Deriso, D. Ruppert, and R.J. Carroll. 1985. An investigation of the population dynamics of Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*). *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 42 (Suppl. 1): 147-157.
- Rice, J.A., Quinlan, J.A., Nixon, S. W., Hettler, W. F., Warlen, S. M., and P. M. Stegmann. 1999. Spawning and transport dynamics of Atlantic menhaden: inferences from characteristics of immigrating larvae and predictions of a hydrodynamic model. *Fisheries Oceanography* 8:93-110.
- Rogers, S. G., T. E. Targett, and S. B. VanSant. 1984. Fish-nursery use in Georgia salt-marsh estuaries: the influence of springtime freshwater conditions. *Trans. AM. Fish. Soc.* 113:595-606.

DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

- Rogers, S.G. and M.J. Van Den Avyle. 1989. Species Profiles: Life histories and environmental requirements of coastal fishes and invertebrates (Mid-Atlantic). Atlantic Menhaden. Biol. Rept. 82(11.108) TR EL-82-4. 23 p.
- Schaaf, W. E. and G. R. Huntsman. 1972. Effects of fishing on the Atlantic menhaden stock: 1955-1969. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, 101:290-297.
- Schick, R. S., P. N. Halpin, A. J. Read, C. K. Slay, S. D. Kraus, B. R. Mate, M. F. Baumgartner, J. J. Roberts, B. D. Best, C. P. Good, S. R. Loarie, J.S. Clark. 2009. Striking the Right Balance in Right Whale Conservation. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 66(9):1399-1403.
- Schueller, A.M., E.H. Williams, and R.T. Cheshire. 2014. A proposed, tested, and applied adjustment to account for bias in growth parameter estimates due to selectivity. Fisheries Research 158: 26-39.
- Sherman, K., I. Belkin, K.D. Friedland, J. O'Reilly, and K. Hyde. 2009. Accelerated warming and emergent trends in fisheries biomass yields of the world's largest marine ecosystems. AMBIO: A Journal of the Human Environment 38(4): 215-224.
- Smith, H.M. 1896. Notes on an investigation of the menhaden fishery in 1894 with special reference to the 93 food fishes taken. Bull. U.S. Fish Comm. 15: 285-302.
- Smith, J. W. 1991. The Atlantic and gulf menhaden purse seine fisheries: origins, harvesting technologies, biostatistical monitoring, recent trends in fisheries statistics, and forecasting. Mar. Fish. Rev. 53(4):28-41.
- Smith, J. W. 1999. Distribution of Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, purse-seine sets and catches from southern New England to North Carolina, 1985-1996, NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 144, 22p.
- Smith, JW and WB O'Bier. 2011. The bait purse-seine fishery for Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, in the Virginia portion of Chesapeake Bay. Mar Fish Rev 73(1): 1-12.
- Smith, Kent, Personal Communication. Florida Fish Wildlife Conservation Commission. March 2017.
- Stegmann, P.M., J.A. Quinlan, F.E. Werner, B.O. Blanton, and P. Berrien. 1999. Atlantic menhaden recruitment to a southern estuary: Defining potential spawning regions. Fish. Oceanogr. 8: 111-123.
- Stephens, E. B., M. W. Newman, A. L. Zachary and F. M. Hetrick. (1980). A viral aetiology for the annual spring epizootics of Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus* (Latrobe) in Chesapeake Bay. Journal of Fish Diseases 3:387-398.
- Stine et al. 2005. Mycobacterial infection in laboratory-maintained Atlantic menhaden. J. Aquatic Animal Health 17:380-385.
- Stout, V.F., C.R. Houle, and F.L. Beezhold. 1981. A survey of chlorinated hydrocarbon residues in menhaden fishery products. Mar. Fish. Rev. 43(3): 1-13.
- Taking of Marine Mammals Incidental to Commercial Fishing Operations; Bottlenose Dolphin Take Reduction Plan Regulations; Sea Turtle Conservation; Restrictions to Fishing Activities; Final Rule. 71 Fed. Reg. 24776 (April 26, 2006).
- Thompson, C. 2010. The Gulf of Maine in Context: State of the Gulf of Maine Report. Fisheries and Oceans Canada. Dartmouth, NS.
- Threatened and Endangered Status for Distinct Population Segments of Atlantic Sturgeon in the Northeast Region. 77 Fed. Reg. 5880 (February 6, 2012).
- U.S. Census Bureau. 2010. Coastline Population Trends in the United States: 1960 to 2008 Population Estimates and Projections. P25-1139. <https://www.census.gov/prod/2010pubs/p25-1139.pdf>
- Vaughan, D.S., and J.W. Smith. 1988. A stock assessment of the Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, fishery. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS 63, 18 p.
- Viverette, C. B., Garman, G. ., McIninch, S. P., Markham, A. C., Watts, B. D., and S. A. Macko. 2007. Finfish-waterbird trophic interactions in tidal freshwater tributaries of the Chesapeake Bay. Waterbirds. 32:1: 50-62.

DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

- Walford, L.A., and R.I. Wicklund. 1968. Monthly sea temperature structure from the Florida Keys to Cape Cod. Serial Atlas of the Marine Environment. Folio 15. American Geographical Society, N .Y.
- Walsh, H. J., Richardson, D. E., Marancik, K. E., and Hare, J. A. 2015. Long-term changes in the distributions of larval and adult fish the Northeast U.S. Shelf Ecosystem. PLoS ONE, 10: e0137382.
- Waring GT, Josephson E, Fairfield-Walsh CP, Maze-Foley K, (eds.). 2009. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stock Assessments -- 2008. NOAA Tech Memo NMFS NE 210; 440 p.
- Waring, G.T. J.M. Quintal and S.L. Swartz (eds.). 2000. U.S. Atlantic and GOM Marine Mammal Stock Assessments- 2000. NOAA Tech Memo. NMFS-NE-162, U.S. DOC. Washington, D.C. 303 p.
- Waring, G.T., E. Josephson, K. Maze-Foley, and P.E. Rosel, editors. 2016. U.S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico Marine Mammal Stocks Assessments, 2015. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-NE-238. 512 p.
- Warlen, S. M. 1994. Spawning time and recruitment dynamic of larval Atlantic menhaden, *Brevoortia tyrannus*, in a North Carolina estuary. Fisheries Bulletin, 92:420-433.
- Warlen, S.M., D.A. Wolfe, C.W. Lewis, and D.R. Colby. 1977. Accumulation and retention of dietary 14C-DDT by Atlantic menhaden. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc. 106: 95-104.
- Warlen, S.M., K.W. Able, and E.H. Laban. 2002. Recruitment of larval Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*) to North Carolina and New Jersey estuaries: evidence for larval transport northward along the east coast of the United States. Fish. Bull. 100(3): 609-623.
- Werner, F.E., B.O. Blanton, J.A. Quinlan and R.A. Luettich, Jr. 1999. Physical oceanography of the North Carolina continental shelf during the fall and winter seasons: implications for the transport of larval menhaden. In: Crowder, L.B. and F.E. Werner (eds.) Fisheries Oceanography of the Estuarine-dependent Fishes of the South Atlantic Bight. Fish. Oceanogr. 8(suppl. 2): 7-21.
- Westman, J. R., and R. F. Nigrelli. 1955. Preliminary studies of menhaden and their mass mortalities in Long Island and New Jersey waters. N .Y. Fish Game J. 2: 142-153.
- Whitehurst, J.W. 1973. The menhaden fishing industry in North Carolina. UNC-Sea Grant Publ. No. UNC-SG-72-12, 51 p.
- Wiley, D. N., R. A. Asmutis, T. D. Pitchford, and D. P. Gannon. 1995. Stranding and mortality of humpback whales, *Megaptera novaeangliae*, in the mid-Atlantic and southeast United States, 1985-1992. Fish. Bull., U.S. 93: 196- 205.
- Wilkins, E. P. H., and R. M. Lewos. 1971. Abundance and distribution of young Atlantic menhaden (*Brevoortia tyrannus*) in the White Oak River estuary, North Carolina. Fish. Bull., U.S. 69: 783-789.
- Winn, H.E., C.A. Price and P.W. Sorensen. (1986). The distributional biology of the right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in the western north Atlantic. Rep. Int. Whal. Comm. (Special issue) 10:129-138.
- Wood, R. J., and H. M. Austin. 2009. Synchronous multidecadal fish recruitment patterns in Chesapeake Bay, USA. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.
- Wood, R. J., E. D. Houde and S. Jung. 2004. Variability in the dynamics of forage fish abundances in Chesapeake Bay: retrospective analysis models and synthesis. Pages 97- 107. In; Orner, D. M. (ed). Chesapeake Bay Fisheries Research Program, Symposium Report- -2003. NOAA Chesapeake Bay Office, Annapolis, MD.
- Wood, R.J. 2000. Synoptic scale climatic foraging of multispecies fish recruitment patterns in Chesapeake Bay. Coll. of William and Mary, Ph.D. Dissertation, 163 p.
- Wynne, K. and M. Schwartz. 1999. Marine Mammals and Turtles of the U. S. Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico. Rhode Island Sea Grant. Narragansett, Rhode Island. 114 pp.

## 9.0 TABLES

**Table 8:** Atlantic menhaden total commercial landings by jurisdiction (in pounds). This includes directed landings, landings under the bycatch allowance, and episodic events landings. Included in this table is New York's recalibrated landings.

	ME	NH	MA	RI	CT	NY	NJ	DE	MD	PFRC	VA	NC	SC	GA	FL
1985	C	C	3,039,625	8,388,046	234,800	2,612,786	2,879,766	176,135	5,372,193	16,768,889	620,119,243	97,738,403	C	-	7,579,674
1986	C	C	3,411,000	10,389,187	254,400	1,157,906	2,453,593	C	5,449,350	10,971,973	445,664,204	66,377,931	9,952	-	7,997,973
1987	C	C	1,215,175	13,609,224	94,900	599,147	2,563,163	22,034	5,793,683	13,120,698	622,989,111	55,498,571	C	-	2,776,777
1988	C	C	8,047,320	15,583,437	175,200	1,460,529	1,984,045	127,713	6,430,164	13,231,368	565,962,962	73,715,713	C	-	1,026,228
1989	C	C	1,459,402	19,033,173	148,500	1,301,178	2,854,361	104,382	6,166,236	8,334,174	590,581,595	66,756,288	C	-	1,372,959
1990	5,744,597	264,500	1,709,605	17,102,650	96,706	1,882,405	9,041,459	167,116	1,662,275	4,523,776	699,320,699	72,231,989	-	-	2,636,497
1991	C	C	12,798,310	5,090,375	96,300	1,883,680	16,597,402	278,774	3,540,179	5,376,264	638,130,543	110,528,754	C	-	2,062,983
1992	C	C	13,499,450	2,849,359	91,200	3,278,878	27,470,906	131,033	1,777,088	5,061,565	566,222,504	57,515,712	C	-	2,788,592
1993	C	C	1,211,569	5,146,280	195,827	3,039,248	28,296,741	164,406	2,326,613	7,884,001	622,024,284	64,711,384	C	-	2,584,766
1994	-		351,251	533,800	60,128	2,785,679	38,176,201	78,672	2,369,071	6,680,937	502,576,593	73,853,901	-	-	1,387,012
1995	-		2,910,613	5,873,315	255,264	3,152,199	36,572,507	101,388	4,264,754	7,002,818	691,212,717	58,374,046	-	-	687,944
1996	-		8,500	802	82,851	32,261	35,516,726	100,063	3,906,808	5,111,423	579,027,717	56,583,873	-	-	294,936
1997	C	C	238,500	5,750	72,329	1,604,968	38,118,579	55,733	3,457,237	5,757,370	494,098,429	56,295,597	C	-	408,492
1998	C	C	121,200	400	338,817	1,246,083	33,287,641	58,048	2,933,818	3,980,738	513,869,130	97,473,775	C	-	301,566
1999	-		292,800	2,330	30,298	703,714	27,753,567	78,551	4,460,534	4,860,883	374,934,651	57,434,540	-	-	288,144
2000	-		72,600	320,000	14,423	1,639,293	31,266,780	47,995	3,935,307	5,023,374	358,228,939	42,034,812	-	-	260,710
2001	-		144,600	-	38,865	1,670,079	26,375,573	53,257	3,970,243	3,329,035	484,517,820	57,261,488	-	-	179,951
2002	-		301,500	5,750	1,138,788	1,288,543	24,716,412	80,261	4,023,389	3,122,050	362,633,153	55,600,503	-	-	55,304
2003	-		218,255	62	46,515	939,018	17,080,463	43,193	3,163,252	2,438,790	372,479,419	68,444,122	-	-	35,810
2004	C	C	-	39,232	33,210	1,574,628	20,678,813	75,635	5,369,952	5,411,043	394,093,117	48,318,743	C	-	21,220
2005	-		2,177,724	14,453	30,636	2,523,783	17,574,826	120,658	10,635,776	4,759,905	370,689,041	50,987,985	-	-	39,404
2006	-		2,524,255	15,524	866,235	2,352,417	21,290,309	111,405	6,841,296	3,413,517	369,912,280	12,846,438	-	-	157,117
2007	C	C	5,543,805	8,948	90,254	1,401,010	37,202,485	81,850	11,210,764	5,036,906	416,447,111	1,134,167	C	-	71,373
2008	C	C	14,131,256	269,288	104,881	1,188,244	38,210,688	72,970	8,153,008	4,820,645	344,813,285	645,231	C	-	60,098
2009	166,942	33	6,719,048	107,548	170,907	957,546	33,329,177	69,476	7,756,192	3,191,905	349,413,370	2,124,733	-	-	52,800
2010	C	C	4,973,857	78,149	42,489	1,143,147	50,497,253	51,933	6,903,300	2,790,728	430,527,995	1,299,130	C	-	76,593
2011	56,000		116,151	83,899	26,929	808,686	74,324,485	70,326	6,505,890	2,759,597	411,802,254	3,529,967	-	-	146,534
2012	C	C	1,648,395	106,606	37,454	748,289	85,457,890	140,375	13,746,098	5,892,228	386,545,236	538,783	C	-	126,141
2013	-		2,314,888	99,821	26,463	1,187,525	39,819,342	125,909	7,074,727	3,295,295	315,724,384	454,172	-	-	224,872
2014	-		2,226,294	500,903	36,552	825,549	41,449,670	161,524	7,005,271	3,175,893	324,209,381	917,375	-	-	220,587
2015	C	C	2,932,828	2,060,381	87,472	1,467,861	47,810,037	150,542	7,551,430	2,739,035	351,281,666	896,919	C	-	377,729
2016	4,548,566	-	3,069,433	317,328	66,957	1,439,173	45,826,473	75,238	5,635,694	2,504,823	335,641,958	397,725	-	-	272,425

**Table 9:** Bait and reduction landings from 1985-2016 in thousands of metric tons.

	<b>Reduction Landings (1000 mt)</b>	<b>Bait Landings (1000 mt)</b>
<b>1985</b>	306.7	26.6
<b>1986</b>	238.0	21.6
<b>1987</b>	327.0	25.5
<b>1988</b>	309.3	43.8
<b>1989</b>	322.0	31.5
<b>1990</b>	401.2	28.1
<b>1991</b>	381.4	29.7
<b>1992</b>	297.6	33.8
<b>1993</b>	320.6	23.4
<b>1994</b>	260.0	25.6
<b>1995</b>	339.9	28.4
<b>1996</b>	292.9	21.7
<b>1997</b>	259.1	24.2
<b>1998</b>	245.9	38.4
<b>1999</b>	171.2	34.8
<b>2000</b>	167.2	33.5
<b>2001</b>	233.7	35.3
<b>2002</b>	174.0	36.2
<b>2003</b>	166.1	33.2
<b>2004</b>	183.4	34.0
<b>2005</b>	146.9	38.4
<b>2006</b>	157.4	27.2
<b>2007</b>	174.5	42.1
<b>2008</b>	141.1	47.6
<b>2009</b>	143.8	39.2
<b>2010</b>	183.1	42.7
<b>2011</b>	174.0	52.6
<b>2012</b>	160.6	63.7
<b>2013</b>	131.0	37.0
<b>2014</b>	131.1	41.8
<b>2015</b>	143.5	45.9
<b>2016</b>	137.4	44.4

**Table 10:** Timeline for BERP Workgroup development of menhaden-specific ecosystem reference points.

2016	Summer	Review steele-henderson multi-species model
		Evaluate data needs of model
		Review preliminary methodology of statistical catch-at-age and production models
	Fall	Review results of Ecopath with Ecosim model
2017	Winter	Review multi-species statistical catch at age model
		Evaluate data needs of model
	Summer	Review multi-species production model
		Evaluate data needs of model
	Fall	Review finalized modeling plan and candidate models
		Decide which candidate models will be included for ERP development and peer review
		Discuss data requirements of the models and data sources
2018	Winter	<b>Data Workshop #1</b>
		Review data sources for the multi-species models
		Develop criteria for inclusion of data in models
	Summer	<b>Data Workshop #2</b>
		Approve data sources of multi-species models
2019	Winter	Discuss standardization of data across sources
		<b>Assessment Workshop #1</b>
		Review base run results from multi-species models
	Spring	Discuss sensitivity runs for models
		<b>Assessment Workshop #2</b>
		Review final model results of multi-species models
	Summer	Summarize findings and recommendations
		Write stock assessment report
	Fall	<b>Peer Review Workshop</b>
		Independent review of multi-species models and single-species BAM model



**Table 11:** Current reporting requirements in the menhaden commercial fishery per state.

State	Dealer Reporting	Harvester Reporting	Notes
ME	monthly	<b>monthly/daily</b>	Harvesters landing greater than 6,000 lbs must report daily during episodic event
NH	<b>weekly</b>	monthly	Exempt from timely reporting. Implemented weekly, trip level reporting for state dealers.
MA	<b>weekly</b>	monthly/daily	Harvesters landing greater than 6,000 lbs must report daily
RI	<b>twice weekly</b>	quarterly/daily	Harvesters using purse seines must report daily
CT	<b>weekly/monthly</b>	monthly	No directed fisheries for Atlantic menhaden
NY	<b>Weekly</b>	monthly	Capability to require weekly harvester reporting if needed
NJ	<b>weekly</b>	monthly	All menhaden sold or bartered must be done through a licensed dealer
DE	—	<b>monthly/daily</b>	Harvesters landing menhaden report daily using IVR
MD	monthly	<b>monthly/daily</b>	PN harvest is reported daily, while other harvest is reported monthly.
PRFC	—	<b>weekly</b>	Trip level harvester reports submitted weekly. When 70% of quota is estimated to be reached, then pound netters must call in weekly report of daily catch.
VA	—	<b>monthly/weekly/daily</b>	Purse seines submit weekly reports until 97% of quota, then daily reports. Monthly for all other gears until 90% of quota, then reporting every 10 days.
NC	<b>monthly (combined reports)</b>		Single trip ticket with dealer and harvester information submitted monthly. Larger dealers (>50,000 lbs of landings annually) can report electronically, updated daily.
SC	<b>monthly (combined reports)</b>		Exempt from timely reporting. Single trip ticket with dealer and harvester information.
GA	<b>monthly (combined reports)</b>		Exempt from timely reporting. Single trip ticket with dealer and harvester information.
FL	<b>monthly/weekly (combined reports)</b>		Monthly until 50% fill of quota triggers implementation of weekly.

**Table 12:** ACCSP data elements, and descriptions, for commercial harvester reporting.

DATA ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
Form Type/Version Number	Version identification number for the ACCSP reporting form
Reporting Form Series Number	Individual number for each reporting form (ie: trip ticket number)
Trip Start Date	Date trip started
Vessel Identifier	Unique vessel ID such as US Coast Guard documentation or state registration number
Individual Fisherman Identifier	Identified unique to a fisherman
Dealer Identification	Identifier for the dealer at point of transaction
Unloading Date	Date of the landing at dealer
Trip Number	Sequential number representing the number of a trip taken in a single day by either a vessel or individual
Species	Genus and species for each species landed, sold, released, or discarded
Quantity	Amount that is landed, sold, released, or discarded
Units of Measure	Landed units
Disposition	Fate of catch
Ex-vessel Value or Price	Dollar value or price for each species that is landed or sold
County or Port Landed	Location within a state where the product was landed
State Landed	State where the product was landed or unloaded
Gear	Types(s) of gear used to catch the landed species
Quantity of Gear	Amount of gear employed
Number of Sets	Total number of sets or tows of gear during a trip
Fishing Time	Total amount of time that the gear is in the water
Days/Hours at Sea	Time from the start of the trip to the return to the dock
Number of Crew	Number of crew, including the Captain
Area Fished	NOAA Fisheries statistical area where fishing occurred
Distance From Shore	Determination of catch distance from shore
Sale Disposition	To whom catch was sold

DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

**Table 13:** ACCSP standard measurements of gear quantity, fishing time, and sets for commercial harvester reporting.

TYPE OF GEAR	QUANTITY	FISHING TIME	# SETS
Pound nets, traps and pots	# of traps, pots, or pound nets fished	Total soak time for each pot, trap, or pound net	# of strings hauled or # of pound nets fished
Trawls	# of trawls towed	Total tow time of each trawl	# of tows
Gill Nets	Float line length for string	Total soak time	# of strings/hauls
Nests/cast nets	# of pieces of apparatus	Search time	# of hauls/throws
Hook and line	# of lines	Total soak time	n/a
Purse seines	Length of floatline	Total search time	# of sets
Hand gear	# of lines	Total soak time	n/a

**Table 14:** Number of ten fish samples from the reduction fishery landings at Reedville, VA from 2007-2016.

	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016
# 10 fish samples	379	277	283	327	323	263	213	208	256	251

**Table 15:** Number of ten fish samples required and collected by each jurisdiction in the bait fishery in 2016. Number of samples required is based on total bait landings in that jurisdiction.

State	#10-fish samples required	#10-fish samples collected	Gear/Comments
ME	7	9	purse seine
MA	5	7	purse seine (2), cast net (5)
RI	0	5	floating fish trap
CT	0	1	gill nets
NY	2	9	seines
NJ	69	113	purse seine (100), and other gears (13)
DE	0	5	drift gill net
MD	13	19	pound net
PRFC	6	9	pound net
VA	74	82	pound net (16), gill net (64), haul seine (2)
NC	1	6	gillnet, seine
<b>Total</b>	<b>177</b>	<b>265</b>	

**Table 16:** Fishery independent surveys used in the juvenile abundance index, the northern adult index, and the southern adult index as a part of the 2015 Stock Assessment.

<b>Index</b>	<b>Survey</b>
Juvenile Abundance Index	Rhode Island Trawl Survey
	Connecticut Seine Survey
	Connecticut Thames River Survey
	Connecticut Long Island Sound Trawl Survey
	New York Peconic Bay Trawl Survey
	New York Western Long Island Sound Seine Survey
	New Jersey Ocean Trawl Survey
	New Jersey Juvenile Striped Bass Seine Survey
	Delaware Bay Juvenile 16ft Trawl Survey
	Delaware Inland Bay Juvenile Trawl Survey
	Maryland Juvenile Striped Bass Seine Survey
	Maryland Coastal Trawl Survey
	Virginia Striped Bass Seine Survey
	VIMS Juvenile Trawl Survey
	South Carolina Electrofishing Survey
	Georgia Trawl Survey
Northern Adult Index	Connecticut Long Island Sound Trawl Survey
	New Jersey Ocean Trawl Survey
	Delaware Bay Juvenile 16ft Trawl Survey
	Delaware Bay Juvenile 30ft Trawl Survey
	Chesapeake Bay Fishery-Independent Multispecies Survey
	ChesMMAAP
	VIMS Juvenile Trawl Survey
Southern Adult Index	Georgia Trawl Survey
	SEAMAP Trawl Survey

**Table 17:** Total number of bycatch trips by year from 2013-2016 separated into 1,000 pound landings bins

<b>Bins (LBS)</b>	<b>2013 Trips</b>	<b>2014 Trips</b>	<b>2015 Trips</b>	<b>2016 Trips</b>	<b>Total Trips</b>	<b>% of Total Trips 2013-2016</b>
1-1000	1,875	3,673	3,163	1,450	10,161	69%
1001-2000	252	517	582	148	1,499	10%
2001-3000	148	318	316	73	855	6%
3001-4000	110	190	139	48	487	3%
4001-5000	131	206	132	48	517	4%
5001-6000	158	265	196	108	727	5%
6000+	130	109	140	33	412	3%
<b>Total</b>	<b>2,804</b>	<b>5,278</b>	<b>4,668</b>	<b>1,908</b>	<b>14,658</b>	

DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR PUBLIC COMMENT

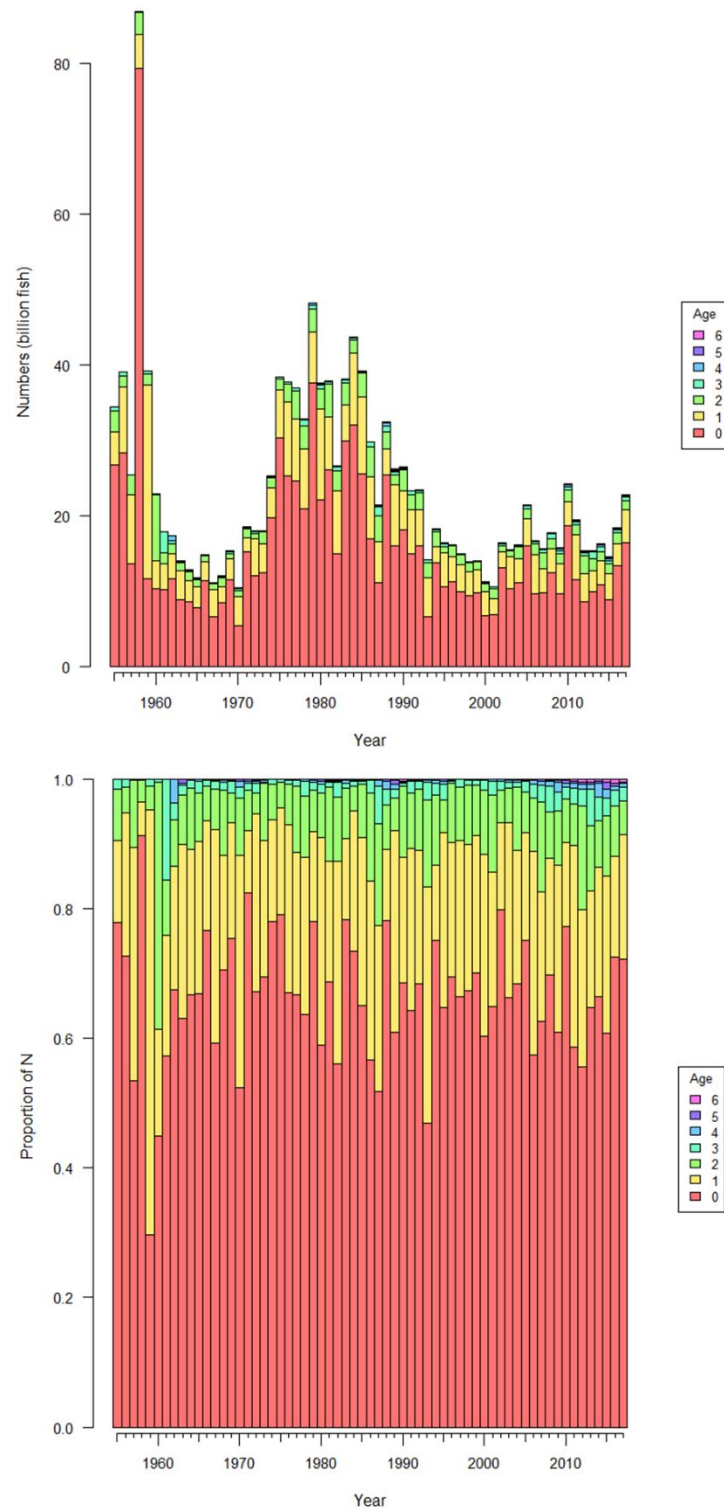
**Table 18:** Average landings under the bycatch allowance from 2013–2016 by gear type (stationary and mobile) and jurisdiction. Highlighted cells represent the gear type with the highest landings within a jurisdiction. (C) = confidential landings, and (-) = no landings. Total confidential landings are 183,747 pounds (i.e., the sum of all C's in the table below). Note that sum of pounds and percent of total columns do not include confidential data.

State/Jurisdiction	ME	RI	CT	NY	NJ	DE	MD	PRFC	VA	FL	Sum lbs (NonConf)	% of Total
<b>Stationary Gears While Fishing</b>												
Pound net	-	47,907	-	96,176	C	-	1,974,979	688,428	112,609	-	2,920,097	61.62%
Anchored/stake gill net	-	C	913	0	79,850	23,227	19,722	1,704	966,832	C	1,092,248	23.05%
Pots	-	-	-	C	-	C	C	-	-	C	-	0.00%
Fyke nets	-	-	-	-	C	-	C	26	77	-	103	0.00%
<b>Mobile Gears While Fishing</b>												
Cast Net	-	C	-	152,669	C	-	C	-	-	150,585	303,253	6.40%
Drift Gill net	-	-	-	24,443	83,697	53,381	12,061	-	62,189	-	235,771	4.98%
Purse Seine	C	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0.00%
Seines Haul/Beach	-	-	-	177,173	-	-	C	35	3,840	-	181,048	3.82%
Trawl	-	C	C	6,565	C	-	-	-	-	-	6,565	0.14%
Hook & Line	-	C	C	-	-	-	C	-	-	C	-	0.00%
<b>Sum lbs (NonConf)</b>	-	47,907	913	457,025	163,547	76,608	2,006,762	690,193	1,145,547	150,585	4,739,085	
<b>% of Total</b>	0.00%	1.01%		9.64%	3.45%	1.62%	42.34%	14.56%	24.17%	3.18%		

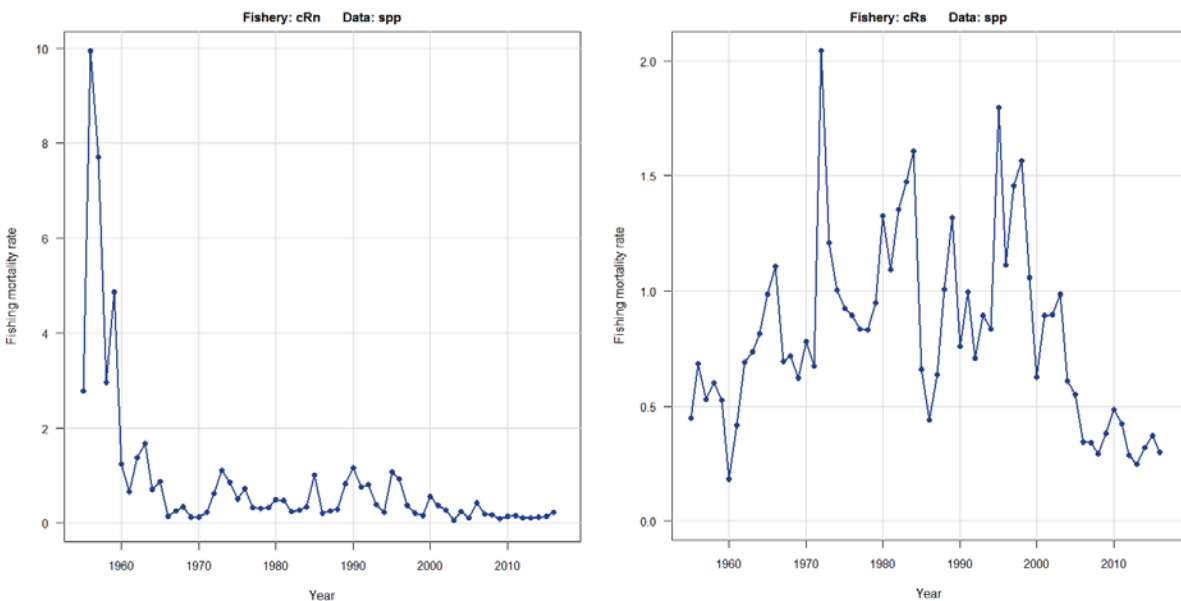
**Table 19:** Episodic event set aside for 2013-2016 and the percent used by participating states.

Year	Set Aside (lbs)	Landed (lbs)	% Used	Participating State	Unused Set Aside Reallocated (lbs)
<b>2013</b>	3,765,491				
<b>2014</b>	3,765,491	295,000	8%	RI	3,470,491
<b>2015</b>	4,142,040	1,883,292	45%	RI	2,258,748
<b>2016</b>	4,142,040	3,810,145	92%	ME, RI, NY	331,895

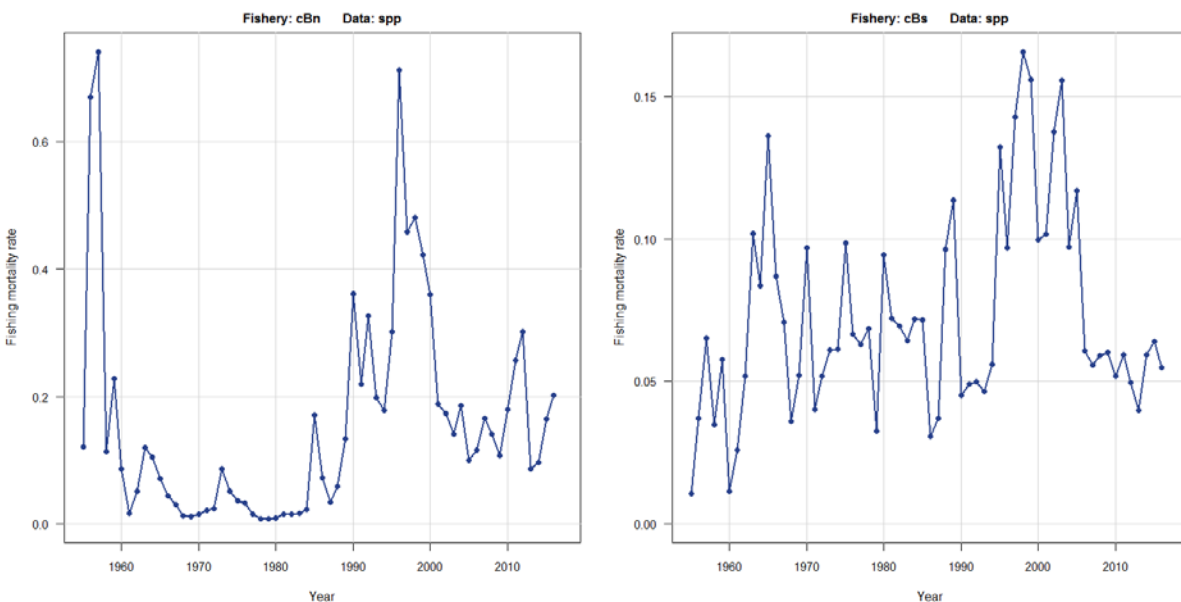
## 10.0 FIGURES



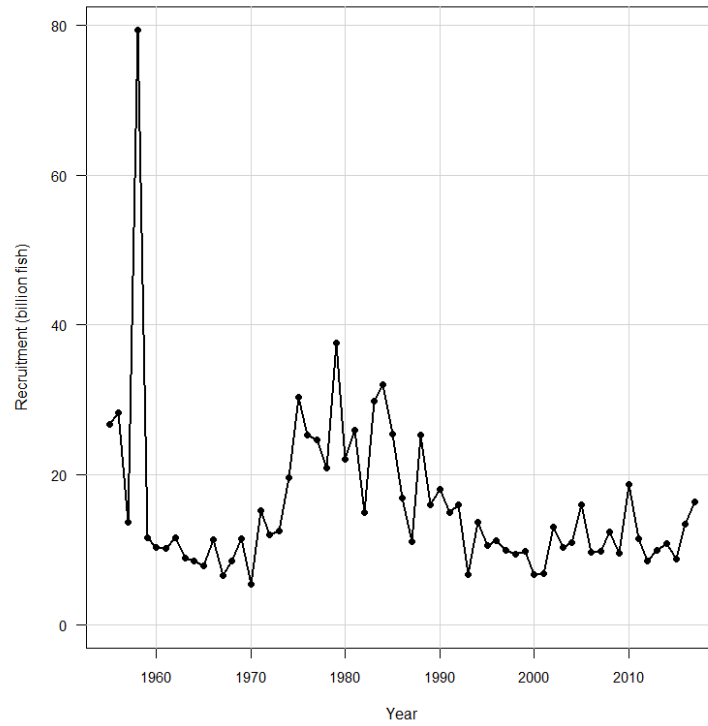
**Figure 3.** Numbers at age (upper panel) and proportion of numbers at age (lower panel) estimated from the base run of the BAM for ages 0-6+ during the time period 1955-2016. (Source: 2017 Stock Assessment)



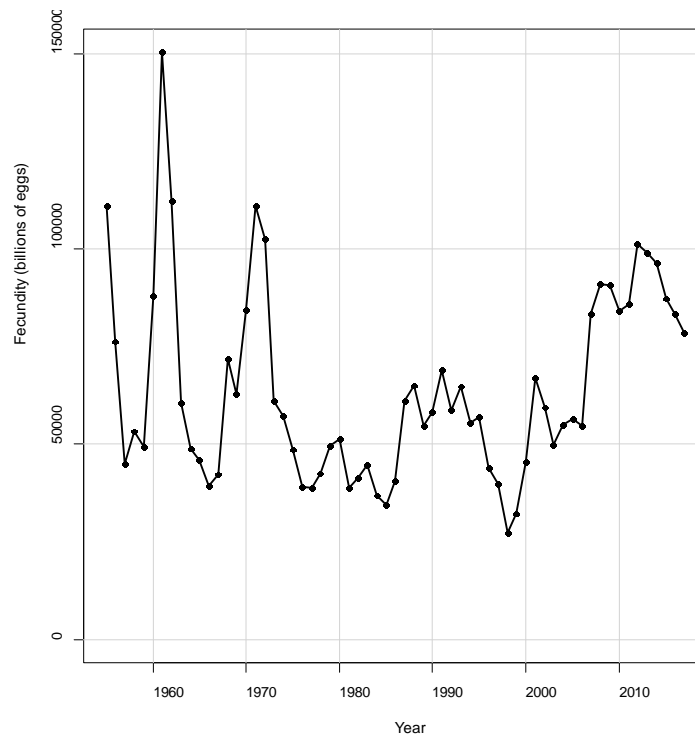
**Figure 4.** Fishing mortality rate for the northern commercial reduction fishery (left) and southern commercial reduction fishery (right) from 1955- 2016. The northern region is defined as waters north of Machipongo Inlet, VA and the southern region is comprised of waters south of Machipongo Inlet, VA. (Source: 2017 Stock Assessment)



**Figure 5.** Fishing mortality rate for the northern commercial bait fishery (left) and the southern commercial bait fishery (right) from 1955-2016. The northern region is defined as waters north of Machipongo Inlet, VA and the southern region is comprised of waters south of Machipongo Inlet, VA. (Source: 2017 Stock Assessment)

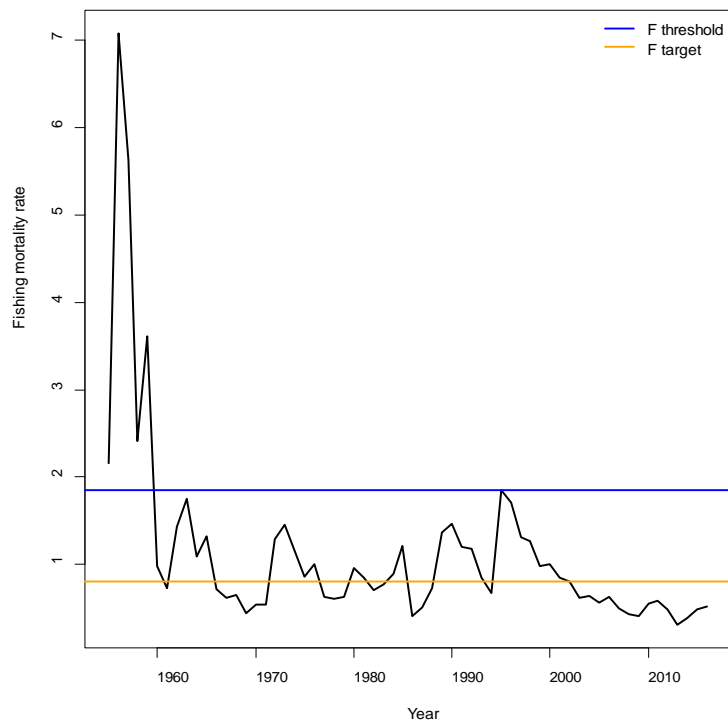


**Figure 6.** Number of recruits in billions of fish predicted from the base run of BAM for 1955-2016. (Source: 2017 Stock Assessment)

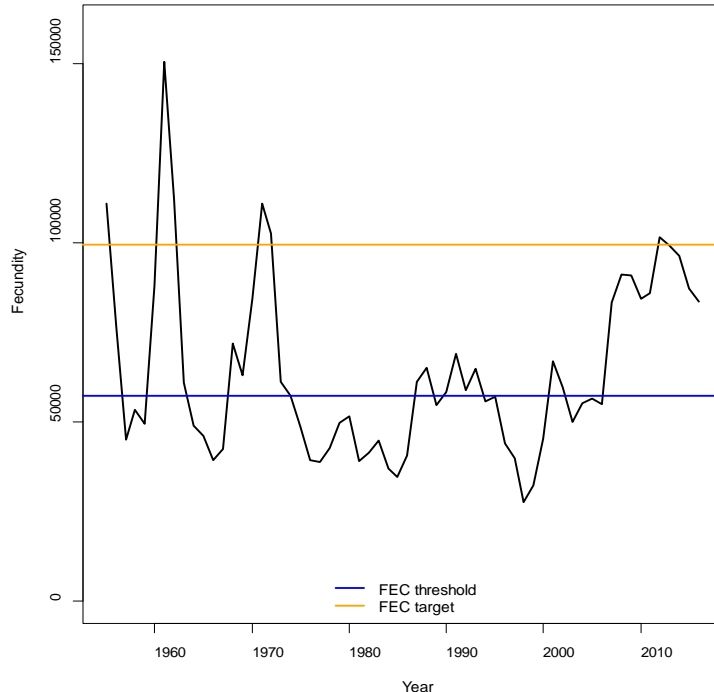


**Figure 7.** Fecundity in billions of eggs over time, 1955-2017, with the last year being a projection based on 2016 mortality. (Source: 2017 Stock Assessment)

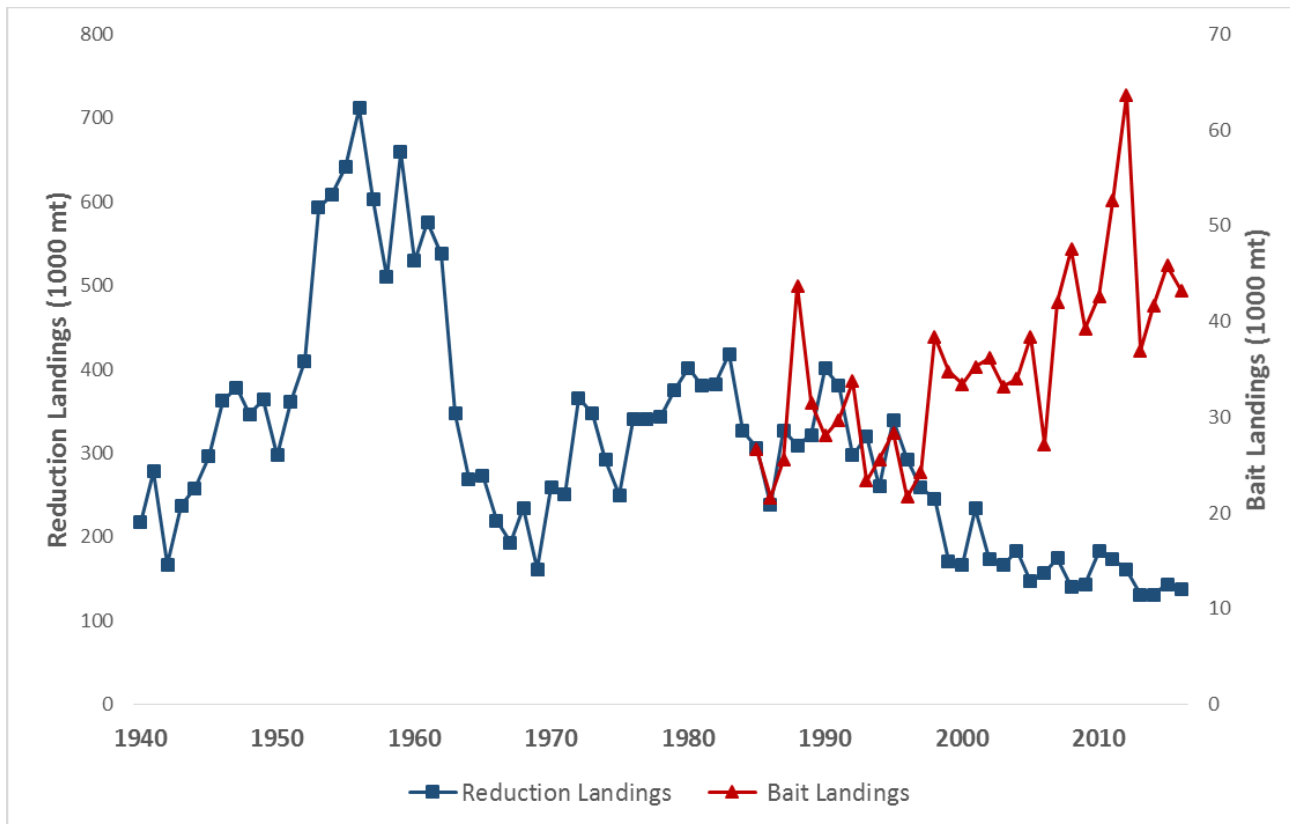




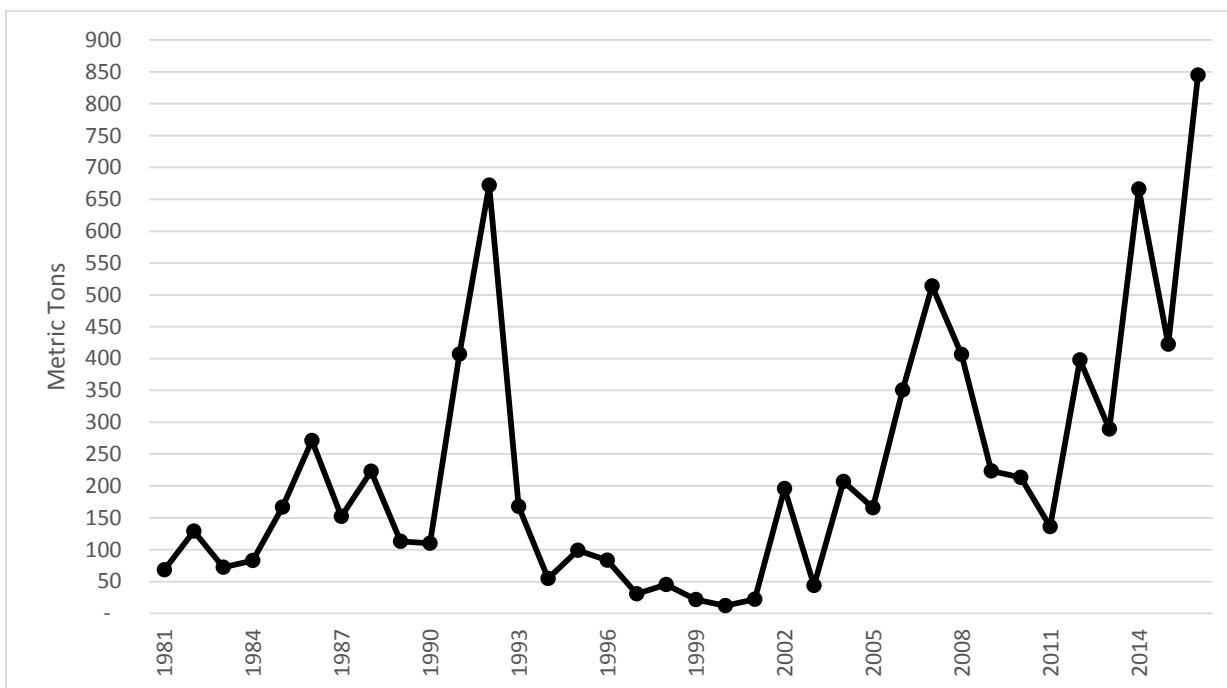
**Figure 8:** Atlantic menhaden fishing mortality (ages 2-4) from 1955-2016. The yellow line is the target ( $F_{36\%}$ ) and the blue line is the threshold ( $F_{21\%}$ ). Results of this figure show that overfishing is not occurring as fishing mortality is below the target. (Source: 2017 Stock Assessment)



**Figure 9:** Atlantic menhaden fecundity (in billions of eggs) from 1955 -2016. The yellow line is the target ( $FEC_{36\%}$ ) and the blue line is the threshold ( $FEC_{21\%}$ ). Results of this figure show the stock is not overfished as the fecundity is well above the threshold. (Source: 2017 Stock Assessment)



**Figure 10:** Landings from the reduction purse seine fishery (1940–2016) and bait fishery (1985–2016) for Atlantic menhaden. Note there are two different scales on the y-axes.



**Figure 11:** Recreational harvest of Atlantic menhaden from 1981-2016. Note: 2016 recreational landings are preliminary. (Source: MRIP).

## Appendix 1

**TO:** Atlantic Menhaden Management Board

**FROM:** Biological Ecological Reference Points Workgroup

**DATE:** July 14, 2017

**SUBJECT:** Interim Reference Points Calculations

The Biological Ecological Reference Points Workgroup (WG) was tasked by the Atlantic Menhaden Management Board (Board) to calculate the interim reference points. The Board is considering these reference points through Amendment 3, while the models for ecological reference points are in development. The WG met with members of the Lenfest Forage Fish Task Force to make sure that these interim reference points are properly calculated and congruent with the intention of Pikitch et al. (2012). The WG developed a list of questions that were distributed to the Task Force prior to the call. The WG discussed the recommendations generated from these questions during two subsequent calls to come to consensus on how to calculate these reference points. All calculations were done using the latest results from the 2017 Stock Assessment Update. To make all reference points comparable, F values will be reported below as biomass-weighted averages over the entire population. So for instance, the reference points from the 2017 stock assessment update presented below represent the same level of fishing pressure, but the values differ from the mean F values over ages 2-4 you may be accustomed to seeing. Options below are labeled identically to draft Amendment 3 for consistency and for comparison current F and B levels from the 2017 stock assessment are provided. The WG has a number of comments and caveats regarding the calculation of these reference points which are found at the conclusion of this document.

Description	Reference Point	B-weighted F
Single species target and threshold from 2017 assessment update (Options A/B)	$F = F_{FEC21\%}$	1.164
	$F = F_{FEC36\%}$	0.408
Hockey-stick harvest control rule Pikitch et al. 2012 (Option C)	$F_{threshold}$ ( $F = 0.5M$ )	0.367
	$F_{target}$	0.041
B75% rule of thumb/ $F_{B75\%}$ & $F_{B40\%}$ target and threshold (Options D/E)	$F = F_{75\%B_0}$	0.160
	$F = F_{40\%B_0}$	1.493

Current levels from 2017 stock assessment	
$F_{2016}$	0.204
$B_{2016}$	46.7% $B_0$

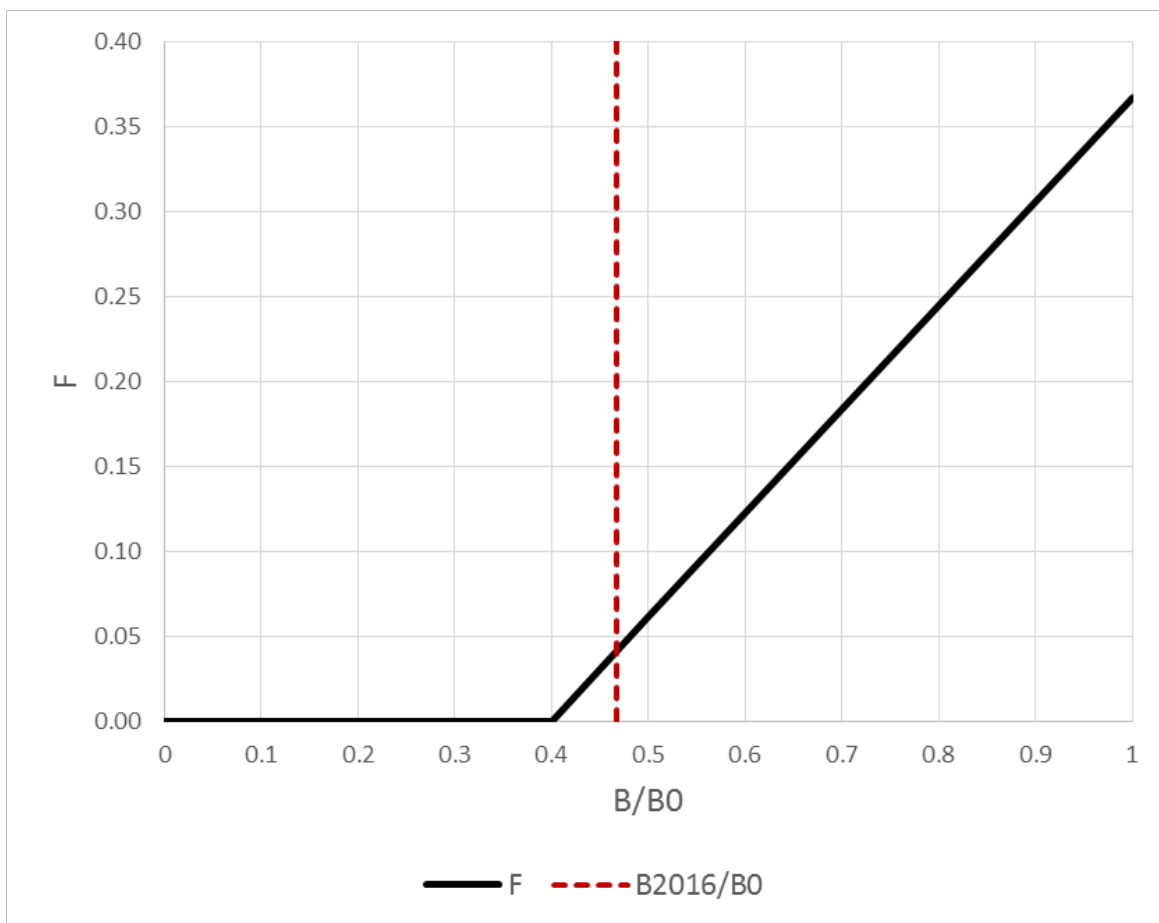
**Option A/B: Single species reference points from 2017 Stock Assessment Update ( $F=F_{FEC36\%}$ ,  $F=F_{FEC21\%}$ )**

These reference points were calculated as per the 2017 stock assessment update, but in order to be comparable to the biomass-weighted interim reference points, the biomass-weighted average  $F$  have been provided instead of the geometric mean over ages 2-4.

Option	B-weighted $F$
$F=F_{FEC21\%}$ (Threshold)	1.164
$F=F_{FEC36\%}$ (Target)	0.408

**Option C: Pikitch et al (2012) A hockey-stick control rule where  $F$  does not exceed half of  $M$  and fishing is prohibited if biomass falls below 40% unfished biomass**

To calculate a target  $F$  for the next fishing season, Pikitch et al. (2012) recommends management actions for species in the “intermediate information tier” (previously determined for Atlantic menhaden by the WG, 2015) in the form of applying a hockey stick harvest control rule with  $B_{LIM} \geq 0.4B_0$  ( $B_0$ = unfished biomass) and  $F \leq 0.5 * M$ . In this scenario, fishing would be prohibited when biomass levels fall below 40 percent of unfished biomass. When biomass is



greater than 40 percent of unfished biomass, the fishing mortality would not exceed half the natural mortality rate and would depend on how large the population is relative to  $B_0$ . To calculate  $F$  target rates at  $40\%B_0 < B < B_0$ , a straight line was fitted between  $F=0$  at  $40\%B_0$  and  $F=0.5M$  at  $100\%B_0$ , shown in black in the figure below. The red-hashed line represents the ratio of current biomass to  $B_0$  from the 2017 Stock Assessment Update ( $B_{2016} = 46.7\% B_0$ , above  $B_{LIM}$ ) and intersects the black line at  $F=0.041$ . This makes the  $F$  target in this scenario equal to 0.041. As of 2016, the terminal year of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update,  $F(2016)=0.204$  which is above this target, but less than the threshold of 0.5M (0.367).

Option	B-weighted $F_{threshold}$	2016 $F_{target}$
$F=0.5M$	0.367	0.041

**Option D: The 75% rule of thumb which specifies that a species be managed to 75% unfished biomass**

**Option E: An  $F$  target of 75% unfished biomass and threshold of 40% unfished biomass**

For Options D and E, the  $F$  reference points that achieve specific percentages of unfished biomass, we use biomass per-recruit calculations from the assessment model to estimate biomass-weighted  $F$  rates that achieve 40% and 75% unfished biomass per recruit. This produces a full  $F$  that can be translated to a biomass-weighted average  $F$  for comparison with the  $F=0.5 M$  reference points. For comparison of reference points, the equilibrium biomass-at-age under that level of  $F$  is used to weight the full  $F$ .

Option	B-weighted $F$
$F=F75\%B_0$	0.160
$F=F40\%B_0$	1.493

For Option D, the fishing mortality rate which achieves the 75% unfished biomass is  $F=0.160$ . As of 2016, the terminal year of the 2017 Stock Assessment Update,  $F(2016)=0.204$  which is above this reference point. In addition,  $B_{2016} = 46.7\%B_0$ , below  $75\%B_0$ .

For Option E, the  $F$ -target which achieves 75% unfished biomass is 0.160 and the  $F$ -threshold which achieves 40% unfished biomass is 1.493. As noted above,  $F(2016)=0.204$ , which is above the target but below the threshold.

#### Workgroup Conclusions on Interim Reference Points

- Even after consultation of the WG with the author and coauthors of Pikitch et al (2012), it was not readily apparent to either group how best to translate reference points derived from an Ecopath-with-Ecosim meta-analysis to an age-structured single species framework. This is a novel application rather than standard practice.
- The WG has concerns about the use of reference points that preserve a certain proportion of total biomass instead of spawning stock biomass or fecundity, because they may result in a level of spawning potential well below the FEC limit. For menhaden,

age 0 and 1 represent a significant proportion of the total biomass, but do not contribute to the spawning population, and are not targeted by the fishery. Therefore, the level of fishing pressure that reduces total biomass to  $40\%B_0$  is higher than almost anything seen in the history of the fishery and results in almost total loss of spawning adults.

- Although biomass-weighted  $F_s$  allow comparison across different types of reference points, they are averaged across the entire population, including the unexploited biomass of ages 0 and 1. This means that the population average  $F$  is lower than the  $F$  experienced by the most heavily exploited age groups, even for values of fully recruited  $F$  which would be considered unachievable or unrealistically high in an age-structured framework.
- The ecosystem models used in Pikitch et al. (2012) to develop biomass and fishing mortality reference points assumed constant selectivity over the entire population or over all adult size classes for the forage groups. The Atlantic Menhaden BAM model uses a dome-shaped selectivity where the oldest age classes are less vulnerable to the fishery than the middle age classes. Thus, the ecosystem models used in Pikitch et al. (2012) make fundamentally different assumptions about the behavior of the fisheries and the effects of fishing on forage fish populations than the BAM assessment.

## NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL CONSERVATION

### Division of Marine Resources

205 North Belle Mead Road, Suite 1, East Setauket, NY 11733

P: (631) 444-0430 | F: (631) 444-0434 | FW.Marine@dec.ny.gov

www.dec.ny.gov

### New York Menhaden Landings Recalibration

Historically, New York supported a large and active Atlantic menhaden processing fishery. The importance of this fishery diminished during the early to mid-1900s and the last processing plant ceased operations in 1969. From 1950-1969, menhaden harvest in New York averaged over 70 million pounds a year. From 1970 to present the menhaden fishery in New York has primarily been for local bait.

Many permit types in New York allow for the harvest of menhaden, although the only permit type requiring mandatory reporting of menhaden landings prior to 2009 was the menhaden purse seine license. New York implemented mandatory reporting on state trip reports for all permit holders between 2009 and 2011. However, compliance monitoring was not performed until 2013 due to staffing and funding constraints. In addition, discussions with permit holders post compliance monitoring indicated that many were unaware menhaden bait harvest needed to be reported. Thus, the validity of New York's menhaden landings history is of concern due to the significant under reporting of landings prior to 2013.

A previous effort to establish a more accurate landings history in New York occurred in 2013. Letters were sent to permit holders eligible to harvest menhaden between 2009 and 2012 requesting verifiable proof of landings during that time. Acceptable proof of landings included dated receipts, log book records, or trip reports that were not submitted to the state. Only five people were able to provide verifiable landings. While this process helped collect some of the missing information in our landings history, it still left New York with historical harvest data that does not represent the totality of our menhaden fishery during that time.

The current allocation system employed in Amendment 2 divides the TAC to each state/jurisdiction based on average landings between 2009 and 2011. This provides New York 0.055% of the TAC. The current allocation options proposed in the Public Information Document for Amendment 3 cover the time period during which New York's menhaden landings history is incomplete (1985-2012) and when our landings have been constrained by quotas and harvest limits (2013-2016) implemented in Amendment 2. The use of this information to set future quotas will continue to negatively impact New York menhaden fishers by setting quota limits well below true historical harvest levels in New York.

In order to provide a better estimate of our landings history, we compared landings and effort in the years prior to our compliance program (2009-2012) to post initiation of the program (2013-2016) (Table 1). The average annual menhaden reported landings were 315,610 lbs in 2009 - 2012, while average annual reported landings were 1,230,027 lbs in 2013 - 2016. The average yearly number of reported trips taken to harvest menhaden was 162 in 2009-2012, and 912 in 2013-2016. These values were used to determine the amount that reported landings and effort increased after compliance measures were in place.

Average Annual Landings		Average Annual Number of Trips	
2009-2012	315,610	2009-2012	162
2013-2016	1,230,027	2013-2016	912
Increase	2.90	Increase	4.62

Table 1. Average annual landings and effort pre (2009-2012) and post (2013-2016) initiation of New York's compliance program.



It was then assumed that during the years in which reporting was poor, prior to the beginning of our compliance program, landings were severely underreported. The landings multiplier (2.9) is assumed to be a low estimate of how much higher New York's landings were in the past, given that our landings in 2013-2016 occurred under Amendment 2 quotas/trip limits. In the same way, during 1985-2012 when there were no restrictions on menhaden harvest, it is probable that effort was at least 462% higher than reported based upon reporting levels from 2013-2016. For this reason, the effort multiplier (4.62) serves as a higher estimate of where New York's landings may have been during this time period. We present three time series of recalibrated landings in New York from 1985-2012; a low adjusted estimate (2.9 times our current landings), a higher adjusted estimate (4.62 times our current landings), and an average of the two (3.76 times our current landings), in order to account for the unreported landings during this time period (Table 2). In all three cases, these multipliers are still confounded by the limitations imposed by Amendment 2 and may represent underestimates.

	NY Landings	Adjusted Landings (Low-2.9)	Adjusted Landings (Higher-4.62)	Adjusted Landings (Average-3.76)
1985	901,800	2,612,786	4,167,178	3,389,982
1986	399,650	1,157,906	1,846,765	1,502,335
1987	206,795	599,147	955,590	777,369
1988	504,100	1,460,529	2,329,424	1,894,976
1989	449,100	1,301,178	2,075,271	1,688,224
1990	649,710	1,882,405	3,002,281	2,442,343
1991	650,150	1,883,680	3,004,314	2,443,997
1992	1,131,701	3,278,878	5,229,540	4,254,209
1993	1,048,993	3,039,248	4,847,350	3,943,299
1994	961,474	2,785,679	4,442,928	3,614,304
1995	1,087,978	3,152,199	5,027,498	4,089,848
1996	11,135	32,261	51,454	41,858
1997	553,953	1,604,968	2,559,792	2,082,380
1998	430,084	1,246,083	1,987,399	1,616,741
1999	242,886	703,714	1,122,365	913,040
2000	565,800	1,639,293	2,614,537	2,126,915
2001	576,426	1,670,079	2,663,639	2,166,859
2002	444,739	1,288,543	2,055,119	1,671,831
2003	384,875	1,115,099	1,778,490	1,446,794
2004	543,481	1,574,628	2,511,401	2,043,015
2005	871,081	2,523,783	4,025,226	3,274,505
2006	811,934	2,352,417	3,751,911	3,052,164
2007	483,557	1,401,010	2,234,495	1,817,753
2008	410,121	1,188,244	1,895,151	1,541,697
2009	330,496	957,546	1,527,207	1,242,377
2010	394,556	1,143,147	1,823,226	1,483,186
2011	279,117	808,686	1,289,787	1,049,236
2012	258,271	748,289	1,193,459	970,874
2013	1,187,525	1,187,525	1,187,525	1,187,525
2014	825,549	825,549	825,549	825,549
2015	1,467,861	1,467,861	1,467,861	1,467,861
2016	1,439,173	1,439,173	1,439,173	1,439,173
Average	640,752	1,564,735	2,404,153	1,984,444

Table 2. Current landings in New York and the values adjusted by the low, higher, and average multipliers.



In table 3, we show what our initial Amendment 2 quota would have been under each of the adjusted landings scenarios. In all cases, the quota New York would have received is more in line with our average total harvest of 1,230,027 pounds between 2013 and 2016. This is especially true for the higher and average scenarios, where our quota would have been 1,237,392 pounds, and 1,006,613 pounds respectively.

	Low Adjusted Landings	Higher Adjusted Landings	Average Adjusted Landings
2009-2011 Average Landings	969,793	1,546,740	1,258,267
20% Reduction (Amendment 2)	193,959	309,348	251,653
Quota	775,834	1,237,392	1,006,613

Table 3. New York's Initial Amendment 2 quota based on the low, higher, and average adjusted landings.

We believe that these scenarios provide a more realistic representation of the historical menhaden landings in New York, given the limitations of historical reporting.

# NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL CONSERVATION

## Division of Marine Resources

205 North Belle Mead Road, Suite 1, East Setauket, NY 11733

P: (631) 444-0430 | F: (631) 444-0434 | FW.Marine@dec.ny.gov

www.dec.ny.gov

### **Answers to PDT Questions- NY Menhaden Landings Recalibration**

1. The analysis notes that prior to 2009, purse seine landings were reported to the state. Were purse seine landings included in the re-calibration of NY's menhaden landings? If they were, the PDT recommends that the re-calibration only be done on non-purse seine landings.

Although there was a law in place requiring purse seine vessels to report menhaden catches to the state, there was no enforcement of this requirement prior to 2013 as was the case for all other licenses eligible to harvest menhaden. There was a single record of a purse seine catch that was reported to NOAA fisheries in 2003. This was included in the original analysis but has been removed prior to running the analysis a second time.

	Adjusted Landings (Low-2.9)	Adjusted Landings (Higher-4.62)	Adjusted Landings (Average-3.76)
1985	2,612,786	4,167,178	3,389,982
1986	1,157,906	1,846,765	1,502,335
1987	599,147	955,590	777,369
1988	1,460,529	2,329,424	1,894,976
1989	1,301,178	2,075,271	1,688,224
1990	1,882,405	3,002,281	2,442,343
1991	1,883,680	3,004,314	2,443,997
1992	3,278,878	5,229,540	4,254,209
1993	3,039,248	4,847,350	3,943,299
1994	2,785,679	4,442,928	3,614,304
1995	3,152,199	5,027,498	4,089,848
1996	32,261	51,454	41,858
1997	1,604,968	2,559,792	2,082,380
1998	1,246,083	1,987,399	1,616,741
1999	703,714	1,122,365	913,040
2000	1,639,293	2,614,537	2,126,915
2001	1,670,079	2,663,639	2,166,859
2002	1,288,543	2,055,119	1,671,831
2003	939,018	1,442,444	1,190,731
2004	1,574,628	2,511,401	2,043,015
2005	2,523,783	4,025,226	3,274,505



Department of  
Environmental  
Conservation

2006	2,352,417	3,751,911	3,052,164
2007	1,401,010	2,234,495	1,817,753
2008	1,188,244	1,895,151	1,541,697
2009	957,546	1,527,207	1,242,377
2010	1,143,147	1,823,226	1,483,186
2011	808,686	1,289,787	1,049,236
2012	748,289	1,193,459	970,874
2013	1,187,525	1,187,525	1,187,525
2014	825,549	825,549	825,549
2015	1,467,861	1,467,861	1,467,861
2016	1,439,173	1,439,173	1,439,173
Average	1,559,233	2,393,652	1,976,442

2. What percentage of NY's landings are by purse seines?

In all years from 1985-2016, except for 2003, purse seine landings account for 0% of the menhaden landings in New York. In 2003, they accounted for 24% of the total landings.

3. For the 2009-2012 and the 2013-2016 timeframes, can you provide a breakdown of average landings by gear type and average number of participants in the fishery. The PDT is interested in seeing what other changes might of occurred in the NY menhaden fishery between the two timeframes.

The table below includes average landings by gear type in the two timeframes. Confidential landings are displayed with a "C". The total value of all confidential landings is 14,380 lbs.

Year	Cast Nets	Fixed Nets	Gill Nets	Hook and Line	Pots and Traps	Seines	Trawls	Not Coded
2009-2012	84,302	C	220,136	C		C	1,293	900
2013-2016	348,155	272,073	196,286	C	C	405,049	5,230	3

New York has a number of different permits that allow a fisher to harvest menhaden. This makes it difficult to determine the exact number of participants in the fishery over the years. It is further complicated by the fact that reporting was poor prior to 2013. In the table below we display the average number of permit holders that could have harvested menhaden and the average number in reporting compliance during the two timeframes.

Year	Average # of Permit Holders	Average % in Compliance
2009-2012	1144	39.4
2013-2016	1130	85.2